# tagpdf – A package to experiment with pdf tagging\*

# Ulrike Fischer $^{\dagger}$

# Released 2021-07-03

# Contents

1	Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.	6
2	Package options	6
3	Packages	6
4	Temporary code 4.1 a LastPage label	<b>6</b> 7
5	Variables	7
6	Variants of 13 commands	9
7	Setup label attributes	9
8	Label commands	9
9	Commands to fill seq and prop	10
10	General tagging commands	11
11	Keys for tagpdfsetup	11
12	loading of engine/more dependent code	12
	The tagpdf-checks module essages and check code	
	rt of the tagpdf package	13
1	Commands	13

<sup>\*</sup>This file describes v0.91, last revised 2021-07-03.

 $<sup>^{\</sup>dagger}\textsc{E-mail:}$ fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de

<b>2</b>	Description of log messages	<b>13</b>
	2.1 \ShowTagging command	13
	2.2 Messages in checks and commands	13
	2.3 Messages from the ptagging code	14
	2.4 Warning messages from the lua-code	14
	2.5 Info messages from the lua-code	14
3	Messages	<b>15</b>
	3.1 Messages related to mc-chunks	15
	3.2 Messages related to mc-chunks	16
	3.3 Attributes	17
	3.4 Roles	17
	3.5 Miscellaneous	17
4	Retrieving data	17
5	User conditionals	18
6	Internal checks	18
	6.1 checks for active tagging	18
	6.2 Checks related to stuctures	19
	6.3 Checks related to roles	20
	6.4 Check related to mc-chunks	$\frac{20}{23}$
ma	The tagpdf-user module de related to LaTeX2e user commands and document comends rt of the tagpdf package	<b>25</b>
Coo	de related to LaTeX2e user commands and document com- nds	
Coo mar Par	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document com- nds et of the tagpdf package	<b>25</b>
Coo mai Par	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document com- nds et of the tagpdf package Setup commands	25 25
Coo mar Par 1	de related to LaTeX2e user commands and document communds ret of the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks	25 25 25
Coomar Par 1 2	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document communds et of the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks  Commands related to structures  Debugging  Extension commands  5.1 Fake space  5.2 Paratagging  5.3 Header and footer	25 25 25 26 26 26 26 27
Coo man Par 1 2 3 4 5	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document communds et of the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks  Commands related to structures  Debugging  Extension commands 5.1 Fake space 5.2 Paratagging 5.3 Header and footer 5.4 Link tagging	25 25 25 26 26 26 26 27 27
Coo man Par 1 2 3 4 5	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document communds related to the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks  Commands related to structures  Debugging  Extension commands 5.1 Fake space	25 25 25 26 26 26 26 27 27 27
Coo man Par 1 2 3 4 5	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document communds et of the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks  Commands related to structures  Debugging  Extension commands 5.1 Fake space 5.2 Paratagging 5.3 Header and footer 5.4 Link tagging	25 25 25 26 26 26 26 27 27
Coo man Par 1 2 3 4 5	de related to LATEX2e user commands and document communds related to the tagpdf package  Setup commands  Commands related to mc-chunks  Commands related to structures  Debugging  Extension commands 5.1 Fake space	25 25 25 26 26 26 26 27 27 27

10	Debugging	<b>2</b> 9
11	Commands to extend document commands  11.1 Document structure	32 32 32 33 35 36
	The tagpdf-tree module mmands trees and main dictionaries t of the tagpdf package	38
1 IV	Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code  1.1 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot  1.2 Writing structure elements  1.3 ParentTree  1.4 Rolemap dictionary  1.5 Classmap dictionary  1.6 Namespaces  1.7 Finishing the structure  1.8 StructParents entry for Page  The tagpdf-mc-shared module	38 38 39 39 42 42 43 44 44
Coc all	de related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by modes t of the tagpdf package	45
1	Public Commands	45
2	Public keys	46
3	Marked content code – shared 3.1 Variables and counters	46 47 48 50
	The tagpdf-mc-generic module de related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode t of the tagpdf package	52
1	Marked content code – generic mode  1.1 Variables	<b>52</b> 52 53 56 62

Coc	The <b>tagpdf-mc-luacode</b> module de related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific t of the tagpdf package	64
1	Marked content code – luamode code  1.1 Commands	<b>64</b> 65 69
	The tagpdf-struct module mmands to create the structure t of the tagpdf package	72
1	Public Commands	72
2	Public keys2.1 Keys for the structure commands2.2 Setup keys	<b>72</b> 72 74
3	Variables 3.1 Variables used by the keys	<b>74</b> 76
4	Commands         4.1 Initialization of the StructTreeRoot          4.2 Handlings kids	<b>77</b> 77 78
5	Keys	83
6	User commands	87
7	Attributes and attribute classes 7.1 Variables	<b>89</b> 89 90
	ver for luatex	0.0
	t of the tagpdf package	93
1	Loading the lua	93
2	Logging functions	97
3	Helper functions  3.1 Retrieve data functions	99 99 101
4	Function for the real space chars	102
5	Function for the tagging	105
6	Parenttree	109

IX The tagpdf-roles module Tags, roles and namesspace code		
Part of the tagpdf package		111
1 Code related to roles and structure names		111
1.1 Variables		
1.2 Namesspaces	 	. 112
1.3 Data	 	. 113
1.4 Adding new tags and rolemapping	 	. 119
1.4.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier	 	. 119
1.4.2 The pdf 2.0 version	 	. 120
1.5 Key-val user interface	 	. 121
X The <b>tagpdf-space</b> module Code related to real space chars Part of the tagpdf package		123
1 Code for interword spaces		123
Index		125

## 1 Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.

```
1 (00=tag)
2 (*package)
  \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
    { A package to experiment with pdf tagging }
  \bool_if:nF
    {
      \bool_lazy_and_p:nn
        {\cs_if_exist_p:N \pdfmanagement_if_active_p:}
        { \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: }
11
    { %error for now, perhaps warning later.
12
      \PackageError{tagpdf}
13
       {
14
         PDF~resource~management~is~no~active!\MessageBreak
         tagpdf~will~no~work.
16
       }
       {
18
         Activate~it~with \MessageBreak
19
         \string\RequirePackage{pdfmanagement-testphase}\MessageBreak
         \string\DeclareDocumentMetadata{<options>}\MessageBreak
         before~\string\documentclass
       }
    }
24
We map the internal module name "tag" to "tagpdf" in messages.
25 \prop_if_exist:NT \g_msg_module_name_prop
      \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag }{ tagpdf }
27
28
```

# 2 Package options

There are only two options to switch for luatex between generic and luamode, TODO try to get rid of them.

# 3 Packages

We need the temporary version of l3ref until this is in the kernel.

34 \RequirePackage{13ref-tmp}

# 4 Temporary code

This is code which will be removed when proper support exists in LaTeX

## 4.1 a LastPage label

See also issue #2 in Accessible-xref

\\_\_tag\_lastpagelabel:

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_lastpagelabel:
36
        \legacy_if:nT { @filesw }
37
38
            \exp_args:NNnx \exp_args:NNx\iow_now:Nn \@auxout
30
                  \token_to_str:N \newlabeldata
41
                    {__tag_LastPage}
43
                      {abspage} { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int}
                      {tagmcabs}{ \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
               }
47
          }
48
     }
49
50
   \AddToHook{enddocument/afterlastpage}
51
    {\__tag_lastpagelabel:}
(End\ definition\ for\ \_\_tag\_lastpagelabel:.)
```

\ref\_value:nnn

This allows to locally set a default value if the label or the attribute doesn't exist. See issue #4 in Accessible-xref.

```
\verb|\ref_value:nnn{$\langle label \rangle$} {\langle attribute \rangle} {\langle Fallback\ default \rangle} }
    \cs_if_exist:NF \ref_value:nnn
53
54
         \cs_new:Npn \ref_value:nnn #1#2#3
55
57
             \exp_args:Nee
                \__ref_value:nnn
                 { \tl_to_str:n {#1} } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } {#3}
59
           }
60
         \cs_new:Npn \__ref_value:nnn #1#2#3
61
62
              \tl_if_exist:cTF { g__ref_label_ #1 _ #2 _tl }
63
                { \tl_use:c { g__ref_label_ #1 _ #2 _tl } }
                {
                  #3
                }
           }
      }
69
```

(End definition for \ref\_value:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

## 5 Variables

A few temporary variables

```
\l__tag_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_tmpa_str
\l__tag_tmpa_prop
\l__tag_tmpa_seq
\l__tag_tmpa_clist
\l__tag_tmpa_int
\l__tag_tmpa_box
\l__tag_tmpb_box
```

```
70 \tl_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpa_tl
71 \str_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpa_str
72 \prop_new:N
               \l__tag_tmpa_prop
73 \seq_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpa_seq
74 \seq_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpb_seq
75 \clist_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_clist
76 \int_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpa_int
77 \box_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpa_box
78 \box_new:N
                \l__tag_tmpb_box
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\l_tag_tmpa_tl|\ and\ others.)$ 

Attribute lists for the label command. We have a list for mc-related labels, and one for structures.

```
\c__tag_refmc_clist
\c__tag_refstruct_clist
```

```
79 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_refmc_clist {tagabspage,tagmcabs,tagmcid}
80 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_refstruct_clist {tagstruct,tagstructobj}
(End definition for \c__tag_refmc_clist and \c__tag_refstruct_clist.)
```

\l\_\_tag\_loglevel\_int

This integer hold the log-level and so allows to control the messages. TODO: a list which log-level shows what is needed. The current behaviour is quite ad-hoc.

```
s1 \int_new:N \l__tag_loglevel_int
(End definition for \l__tag_loglevel_int.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_active\_space\_bool \g\_\_tag\_active\_mc\_bool \g\_\_tag\_active\_tree\_bool \g\_tag\_active\_struct\_bool These booleans should help to control the global behaviour of tagpdf. Ideally it should more or less do nothing if all are false. The space-boolean controles the interword space code, the mc-boolean activates \tag\_mc\_begin:n, the tree-boolean activates writing the finish code and the pdfmanagement related commands, the struct-boolean activates the storing of the structure data. In a normal document all should be active, the split is only there for debugging purpose. Also we assume currently that they are set only at begin document. But if some control passing over groups are needed they could be perhaps used in a document too. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```
82 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
83 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_mc_bool
84 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_tree_bool
85 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_bool
(End definition for \g__tag_active_space_bool and others.)
```

\l\_\_tag\_active\_mc\_bool
\l\_\_tag\_active\_struct\_bool

These booleans should help to control the *local* behaviour of tagpdf. In some cases it could e.g. be necessary to stop tagging completely. As local booleans they respect groups. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```
%6 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
%7 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
%8 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
%9 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
(End definition for \l__tag_active_mc_bool and \l__tag_active_struct_bool.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_tagunmarked\_bool

This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically tag parts not in mc-chunk. It is currently only used in luamode. It would be possible to used it in generic mode, but this would create quite a lot empty artifact mc-chunks.

```
90 \bool_new:N \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool
(End definition for \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool.)
```

## 6 Variants of l3 commands

```
91 \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \pdf_object_if_exist:n {e}{T,F}
92 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdf_object_ref:n {e}
93 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn {nnx}
94 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn {nxx,oxx}
95 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {Nxx}
96 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
97 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ref_label:nn { nv }
98 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn{Nne}
99 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_set_convert:Nnnn {Nonn, Noon, Nnon }
```

# 7 Setup label attributes

tagstruct tagstructobj tagabspage tagmcabs tagmcid

This are attributes used by the label/ref system. With structures we store the structure number tagstruct and the object reference tagstructobj. The second is needed to be able to reference a structure which hasn't been created yet. The alternative would be to create the object in such cases, but then we would have to check the object existence all the time.

With mc-chunks we store the absolute page number tagabspage, the absolute id tagmcabc, and the id on the page tagmcid.

```
100 \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagstruct } {0} { now }
    { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
  \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagstructobj } {} { now }
102
103
      \pdf_object_if_exist:eT {__tag/struct/\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
104
105
           \pdf_object_ref:e{__tag/struct/\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
106
107
  \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagabspage } {0} { shipout }
    { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int }
  \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn { tagmcabs } {0} { now }
    { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
  \ref_attribute_gset:nnnn {tagmcid } {0} { now }
    { \int_use:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int }
```

#### 8 Label commands

\\_\_tag\_ref\_label:nn

A version of \ref\_label:nn to set a label which takes a keyword mc or struct to call the relevant lists. TODO: check if \Obsphack and \Qesphack make sense here.

(End definition for tagstruct and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

115 \cs\_new\_protected:Npn \\_\_tag\_ref\_label:nn #1 #2 %#1 label, #2 name of list mc or struct

```
116
                                        \@bsphack
                                       \ref_label:nv {#1}{c__tag_ref#2_clist}
                                118
                                        \@esphack
                                119
                                120
                                121 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_ref_label:nn {en}
                                (End definition for \__tag_ref_label:nn.)
                                A local version to retrieve the value. It is a direct wrapper, but to keep naming consistent
        \__tag_ref_value:nnn
                                 .... It uses the variant defined temporarly above.
                                122 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_ref_value:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 label, #2 attribute, #3 default
                                     {
                                        \ref_value:nnn {#1}{#2}{#3}
                                124
                                126 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_ref_value:nnn {enn}
                                 (End definition for \__tag_ref_value:nnn.)
                                A command to retrieve the lastpage label, this will be adapted when there is a proper,
\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn
                                 kernel lastpage label.
                                127 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn #1 #2
                                        \ref_value:nnn {__tag_LastPage}{#1}{#2}
                                (End definition for \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn.)
```

# 9 Commands to fill seq and prop

With most engines these are simply copies of the expl3 commands, but luatex will overwrite them, to store the data also in lua tables.

```
\__tag_prop_new:N
      \__tag_seq_new:N
                         131 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_new:N
                                                                    \prop_new:N
   \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
                        132 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_new:N
                                                                    \seq_new:N
__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn
                        133 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
                                                                    \prop_gput:Nnn
     \__tag_seq_item:cn
                        134 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn
    \__tag_prop_item:cn 135 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_item:cn
                                                                    \seq_item:cn
                        136 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_item:cn
                                                                    \prop_item:cn
     \__tag_seq_show:N
                        137 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_show:N
                                                                    \seq_show: N
    \__tag_prop_show:N
                         138 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_show:N
                                                                    \prop_show: N
                         139
                         140 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
                                                                                { Nxn , Nxx, Nnx , cnn, cxn, cnx, cno}
                         141 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn { Nx , No, cn, cx }
                         \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_new:N
                         143 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_new:N
                         144 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_show:N
                                                                         { c }
                         145 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_show:N { c }
                         (End definition for \__tag_prop_new:N and others.)
```

## 10 General tagging commands

\tag\_stop\_group\_begin:
 \tag\_stop\_group\_end:

We need a command to stop tagging in some places. This simply switches the two local booleans.

# 11 Keys for tagpdfsetup

TODO: the log-levels must be sorted

activate-space activate-mc activate-tree activate-struct activate-all Keys to (globally) activate tagging. activate-space activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It is not documented, the parsing is currently implicitly activated by the known key interwordspace, as the code will perhaps move to some other place, now that it is better separated.

(End definition for activate-space and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

log The log takes currently the values none, v, vv, vvv, all. The description of the log levels is in tagpdf-checks.

```
log
                    .choice:.
     log / none
                    .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 0 }},
     log / v
                    .code:n =
165
         \int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 1 }
         \cs_set_protected:Nn \__tag_check_typeout_v:n { \iow_term:x {##1} }
167
       ٦.
168
     log / vv
                    .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 2 }},
169
     log / vvv
                    log / all
                    .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 10 }},
```

(End definition for log. This function is documented on page  $\ref{eq:condition}$  )

tagunmarked This key allows to set if (in luamode) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact.

The initial value is true.

```
tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,
tagunmarked .initial:n = true,
```

(End definition for tagunmarked. This function is documented on page ??.)

This sets the tabsorder one a page. The values are row, column, structure (default) or none. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer controll can be added if needed.

```
.choice:,
      tabsorder
174
      tabsorder / row
                        .code:n =
175
        \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/R},
176
      tabsorder / column
                            .code:n =
177
        \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/C},
178
179
      tabsorder / structure .code:n =
        \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/S},
      tabsorder / none
                            .code:n =
        \pdfmanagement_remove:nn {Page} {Tabs},
                     .initial:n = structure,
183
      tabsorder
                       .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },
      uncompress
184
185
```

(End definition for tabsorder. This function is documented on page ??.)

# 12 loading of engine/more dependent code

### Part I

# The tagpdf-checks module Messages and check code Part of the tagpdf package

#### 1 Commands

\tag\_if\_active\_p: \* This command tests if tagging is active. It only gives true if all tagging has been activated,  $\text{tag\_if\_active:} \underline{TF} \star and \text{ if tagging hasn't been stopped locally.}$ 

\tag\_get:n \* \tag\_get:n{\langle keyword \rangle}

This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument  $\langle keyword \rangle$  are mc\_tag and struct\_tag.

#### $\mathbf{2}$ Description of log messages

#### 2.1\ShowTagging command

Argument type note  $\ShowTaggingmc-data = num$ log+term lua-only

\ShowTaggingmc-current log+term

\ShowTaggingstruck-stack= [log|show] log or term+stop

#### Messages in checks and commands 2.2

command message \@@\_check\_structure\_has\_tag:n \@@\_check\_structure\_tag:N \@@\_check\_info\_closing\_struct:n \@@\_check\_no\_open\_struct: \@@\_check\_struct\_used:n \@@\_check\_add\_tag\_role:nn \@@\_check\_mc\_if\_nested:, mc-nested \@@\_check\_mc\_if\_open: mc-not-open \@@\_check\_mc\_pushed\_popped:nn \@@\_check\_mc\_tag:N \@@\_check\_mc\_used:n \@@\_check\_show\_MCID\_by\_page: \tag mc use:n mc-label-unknown, mc-used-twice  $\role_add_tag:nn$ new-tag

\@@\_struct\_write\_obj:n \tag\_struct\_begin:n \@@\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn tag struct use:n attribute-class, attribute

\@@\_tree\_fill\_parenttree:

struct-missing-tag role-unknown-tag struct-show-closing struct-faulty-nesting struct-used-twice role-missing, role-tag, role-unknown mc-pushed, mc-popped mc-tag-missing, role-unknown-tag mc-used-twice

sys-no-interwordspace struct-no-objnum struct-faulty-nesting struct-faulty-nesting struct-label-unknown attr-unknown

tree-mcid-index-wrong

action error warning  $_{\rm info}$ error

warning

error

error

error

warning warning, info (>0), warning

warning warning

 $\inf (2)$ ,  $\inf o + seq_log(>2)$ error (missing), warning (unknown).

warning warning info (>0)

warning warning TODO: should trigger a standard rerun m

## 2.3 Messages from the ptagging code

A few messages are issued in generic mode from the code which reinserts missing TMB/TME. This is currently done if log-level is larger than zero. TODO: reconsider log-level and messages when this code settles down.

## 2.4 Warning messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number.

message	log-level	remark
WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED:	1	
WARN TAG-OPEN-MC:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-UPS:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS:	2	e.g. from empty hbox

## 2.5 Info messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number. TAG messages are from the traversing function, TEX from code used in the tagpdf-mc module. PARENTREE is the code building the parenttree.

message	log-level	remark
INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC	3	finish of shipout code
INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT	3	interwordspace code
INFO TAG-ABSPAGE	3	
INFO TAG-ARGS	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG	3	
INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE	3	
INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE	4	
INFO TAG-NODE	3	
INFO TAG-NO-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED	2	replaced by artifact
INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX	4	
INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID	4	
INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX 3		
INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ALT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-RAW	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID	3	

message	log-level	remark
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST	4	
INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-KID	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUM	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF	4	

```
1 (00=tag)
```

- 2 (\*header)
- 3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-checks-code} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
- 4 {part of tagpdf code related to checks, conditionals, debugging and messages} 5 (/header)

#### 3 Messages

#### Messages related to mc-chunks 3.1

mc-nested

This message is issue is a mc is opened before the previous has been closed. This is not relevant for luamode, as the attributes don't care about this. It is used in the \@@\_check\_mc\_if\_nested: test.

```
6 (*package)
```

7 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {mc-nested} { nested~marked~content~found~-~mcid~#1 }

(End definition for mc-nested. This function is documented on page ??.)

mc-tag-missing If the tag is missing

```
8 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { required~tag~missing~-~mcid~#1 }
```

(End definition for mc-tag-missing. This function is documented on page ??.)

mc-label-unknown If the label of a mc that is used in another place is not known (yet) or has been undefined as the mc was already used.

```
9 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-label-unknown}
```

- { label~#1~unknown~or~has~been~already~used.\\
- Either~rerun~or~remove~one~of~the~uses. }

(End definition for mc-label-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)

mc-used-twice

An mc-chunk can be inserted only in one structure. This indicates wrong coding and so should at least give a warning.

```
12 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} { mc~#1~has~been~already~used }
```

(End definition for mc-used-twice. This function is documented on page ??.)

mc-not-open

This is issued if a \tag\_mc\_end: is issued wrongly, wrong coding.

13 \msg\_new:nnn { tag } {mc-not-open} { there~is~no~mc~to~end~at~#1 }

(End definition for mc-not-open. This function is documented on page ??.)

```
mc-pushed Informational messages about mc-pushing.
             mc-popped
                         14 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-pushed} { #1~has~been~pushed~to~the~mc~stack}
                         \label{localization} $$15 \mbox{ } msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-popped} { $\#1$-has-been-removed-from-the-mc-stack }$
                         (End definition for mc-pushed and mc-popped. These functions are documented on page ??.)
                        Informational messages about current mc state.
           mc-current
                         16 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-current}
                             { current~MC:~
                               \bool_if:NTF\g__tag_in_mc_bool
                                  {abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,~tag=\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}
                         19
                                  {no~MC~open,~current~abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"}
                         20
                         (End definition for mc-current. This function is documented on page 26.)
                                Messages related to mc-chunks
     struct-no-objnum
                        Should not happen ...
                         22 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-no-objnum} { objnum~missing~for~structure~#1 }
                         (End definition for struct-no-objnum. This function is documented on page ??.)
                        This indicates that there is somewhere one \tag_struct_end: too much. This should
struct-faulty-nesting
                         be normally an error.
                         23 \msg_new:nnn { tag }
                             {struct-faulty-nesting}
                              { there~is~no~open~structure~on~the~stack }
                         (End definition for struct-faulty-nesting. This function is documented on page ??.)
   struct-missing-tag A structure must have a tag.
                         26 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-missing-tag} { a~structure~must~have~a~tag! }
                         (End definition for struct-missing-tag. This function is documented on page ??.)
    struct-used-twice
                         27 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice}
                             { structure~with~label~#1~has~already~been~used}
                         (End definition for struct-used-twice. This function is documented on page ??.)
 struct-label-unknown label is unknown, typically needs a rerun.
                         29 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-label-unknown}
                              { structure~with~label~#1~is~unknown~rerun}
                         (End definition for struct-label-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)
  struct-show-closing Informational message shown if log-mode is high enough
                         31 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing}
                             { closing~structure~#1~tagged~\prop_item:cn{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{S} }
                         (End definition for struct-show-closing. This function is documented on page ??.)
```

#### 3.3 Attributes

Not much yet, as attributes aren't used so much.

```
attr-unknown
```

```
33 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {attr-unknown} { attribute~#1~is~unknown} (End definition for attr-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)
```

#### 3.4 Roles

```
role-missing
                  Warning message if either the tag or the role is missing
    role-unknown
                   34 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-missing}
                                                                { tag~#1~has~no~role~assigned }
role-unknown-tag
                  35 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown}
                                                                { role~#1~is~not~known }
                   36 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag} { tag~#1~is~not~known }
                   (End definition for role-missing, role-unknown, and role-unknown-tag. These functions are docu-
                   mented on page ??.)
        role-tag Info messages.
         new-tag
                  37 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-tag}
                                                                { mapping~tag~#1~to~role~#2 }
                   38 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {new-tag}
                                                                { adding~new~tag~#1 }
                   (End definition for role-tag and new-tag. These functions are documented on page ??.)
```

#### 3.5 Miscellaneous

tree-mcid-index-wrong

Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

```
39 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
40 {something~is~wrong~with~the~mcid--rerun}
```

(End definition for tree-mcid-index-wrong. This function is documented on page ??.)

sys-no-interwordspace

Currently only pdflatex and lualatex have some support for real spaces.

```
41 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {sys-no-interwordspace}
```

42 {engine/output~mode~#1~doesn't~support~the~interword~spaces}

(End definition for sys-no-interwordspace. This function is documented on page ??.)

\\_\_tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n

A simple logging function. By default is gobbles its argument, but the log-keys sets it to typeout.

```
43 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_typeout_v:n \use_none:n
```

 $(\mathit{End \ definition \ for \ } \verb|\__tag\_check\_typeout\_v:n.)$ 

# 4 Retrieving data

```
\tag_get:n This retrieves some data. This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument are mc_tag and struct_tag.
```

```
44 \cs_new:Npn \tag_get:n #1 { \use:c {__tag_get_data_#1: } }
```

(End definition for \tag\_get:n. This function is documented on page 13.)

## 5 User conditionals

\tag\_if\_active\_p:
\tag\_if\_active: TF

This is a test it tagging is active. This allows packages to add conditional code. The test is true if all booleans, the global and the two local one are true.

```
45 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF, F }
46
    {
       \bool_lazy_all:nTF
            {\g_tag_active_struct_bool}
            {\g_tag_active_mc_bool}
            {\g_tag_active_tree_bool}
            {\l__tag_active_struct_bool}
            {\l__tag_active_mc_bool}
53
         }
54
55
            \prg_return_true:
56
         }
57
          {
58
            \prg_return_false:
         }
    }
```

(End definition for \tag\_if\_active:TF. This function is documented on page 13.)

## 6 Internal checks

These are checks used in various places in the code.

## 6.1 checks for active tagging

\\_\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_mc: <u>TF</u>
\\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_struct: <u>TF</u>

Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number.

```
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_mc: {T,F,TF}
63
       \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_mc_bool } { \l__tag_active_mc_bool }
64
        {
65
            \prg_return_true:
66
67
        {
            \prg_return_false:
70
71
  \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_struct: {T,F,TF}
72
73
       \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_struct_bool } { \l__tag_active_struct_bool }
74
75
        {
            \prg_return_true:
76
        }
        {
78
            \prg_return_false:
79
80
    }
```

```
(\textit{End definition for $$\setminus$\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_mc:TF and $\setminus$\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_struct:TF.})
```

#### 6.2 Checks related to stuctures

\ tag check structure has tag:n

Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number. The tests for existence and type is split in structures, as the tags are stored differently to the mc case.

```
82 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n #1 %#1 struct num
    {
83
      \prop_if_in:cnF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
84
        {S}
85
          \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-missing-tag}
    }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_structure\_has\_tag:n.)

\\_\_tag\_check\_structure\_tag:N

This checks if the name of the tag is known, either because it is a standard type or has been rolemapped.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_tag:N #1
91
      \prop_if_in:NoF \g__tag_role_tags_prop {#1}
          \msg_warning:nnx { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
94
95
    }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_structure\_tag:N.)

\\_tag\_check\_info\_closing\_struct:n

This info message is issued at a closing structure, the use should be guarded by log-level.

```
97 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n #1 %#1 struct num
    {
98
       \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
99
100
           \msg_info:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing} {#1}
101
102
103
105 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n {0,x}
```

 $(\mathit{End \ definition \ for \ } \_\texttt{tag\_check\_info\_closing\_struct:n.})$ 

\\_\_tag\_check\_no\_open\_struct:

This checks if there is an open structure. It should be used when trying to close a structure. It errors if false.

```
106 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
       \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-faulty-nesting}
    }
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_check_no_open_struct:.)$ 

#### 6.3 Checks related to roles

\\_\_tag\_check\_add\_tag\_role:nn

This check is used when defining a new role mapping.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 role
       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
           \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
124
125
126
           \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_tags_prop {#2} \l_tmpa_tl
127
               \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
                    \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2}
             }
             {
134
                \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2}
135
136
         }
137
138
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn.|)$ 

#### 6.4 Check related to mc-chunks

\\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_if\_nested:
 \\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_if\_open:

Two tests if a mc is currently open. One for the true (for begin code), one for the false part (for end code).

\\_tag\_check\_mc\_pushed\_popped:nn

This creates an information message if mc's are pushed or popped. The first argument is a word (pushed or popped), the second the tag name. With larger log-level the stack is shown too.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn #1 #2
                                       {
155
156
                                                          \int_compare:nNnT
                                                                         { \left\{ \ \right\} = \left\{ \ 2 \ \right\} }
157
                                                                          { \msg_info:nnx {tag}{mc-#1}{#2} }
158
                                                          \int_compare:nNnT
159
                                                                          { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > { 2 }
160
161
                                                                                             \msg_info:nnx {tag}{mc-#1}{#2}
                                                                                             \scalebox{0.1cm} \sca
                                                                       }
164
                                       }
165
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_pushed\_popped:nn.)

\\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_tag:N

This checks if the mc has a (known) tag.

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_tag:N.)

\g\_tag\_check\_mc\_used\_intarray \\_\_tag\_check\_init\_mc\_used: This variable holds the list of used mc numbers. Everytime we store a mc-number we will add one the relevant array index If everything is right at the end there should be only 1 until the max count of the mcid. 2 indicates that one mcid was used twice, 0 that we lost one. In engines other than luatex the total number of all intarray entries are restricted so we use only a rather small value of 65536, and we initialize the array only at first used, guarded by the log-level. This check is probably only needed for debugging. TODO does this really make sense to check? When can it happen??

```
177 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
178 {
179    \intarray_new:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray { 65536 }
180    \cs_gset_eq:NN \__tag_check_init_mc_used: \prg_do_nothing:
181 }
```

```
(\mathit{End \ definition \ for \ \ \ } \_ \mathtt{tag\_check\_mc\_used\_intarray} \ \mathit{and \ \ \ } \_ \mathtt{tag\_check\_init\_mc\_used:.})
                            This checks if a mc is used twice.
\__tag_check_mc_used:n
                               \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_used:n #1 %#1 mcid abscnt
                            183
                                    \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 2 }
                            184
                            185
                                        \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
                            186
                                        \intarray_gset:Nnn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray
                            187
                            188
                                           { \intarray_item: Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1} + 1 }
                            189
                                        \int_compare:nNnT
                            190
                            191
                                             \intarray_item: Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1}
                            192
                                           }
                            193
                                          >
                                           {
                                             1 }
                                           {
                                             \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} {#1}
                            197
                            198
                                      }
                            199
                            200
                            (End definition for \__tag_check_mc_used:n.)
 \ tag check show MCID by page:
                            This allows to show the mc on a page. Currently unused.
                            201 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:
                            202
                                    \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
                            203
                            204
                            205
                                        \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn
                                           {abspage}
                                           {-1}
                            207
                                      }
                            208
                                    \int_step_inline:nnnn {1}{1}
                            209
                                        \l__tag_tmpa_tl
                           211
                                      }
                           212
                           213
                           214
                                        \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq
                            215
                                        \int_step_inline:nnnn
                                           {1}
                                           {1}
                                           {
                                             \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn
                            219
                                               \{{\tt tagmcabs}\}
                            220
                                               {-1}
                                          }
                                           {
                                             \int_compare:nT
                                                  \__tag_ref_value:enn
                                                    {mcid-###1}
                                                    {tagabspage}
                            228
```

```
{-1}
230
                      ##1
                  }
                  {
                     \sq_gput_right:Nx \l_tmpa_seq
234
                       {
235
                         Page##1-###1-
236
                          \__tag_ref_value:enn
                            {mcid-###1}
                            {tagmcid}
                            {-1}
240
                       }
241
                  }
242
243
               \seq_show:N \l_tmpa_seq
244
245
     }
246
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_check\_show\_MCID\_by\_page:.)

# 6.5 Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream

The following checks are currently only usable in generic mode as they rely on the marks defined in the mc-generic module. They are used to detect if a mc-chunk has been split by a page break or similar and additional end/begin commands are needed.

\\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_in\_galley\_p: \\_\_tag\_check\_mc\_in\_galley:<u>TF</u> At first we need a test to decide if \tag\_mc\_begin:n (tmb) and \tag\_mc\_end: (tme) has been used at all on the current galley. As each command issues two slightly different marks we can do it by comparing firstmarks and botmarks. The test assumes that the marks have been already mapped into the sequence with \@@\_mc\_get\_marks:. As \seq\_if\_eq:NNTF doesn't exist we use the tl-test.

```
247 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: { T,F,TF }
248 {
249  \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
250  { \prg_return_false: }
251  { \prg_return_true: }
252 }
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF.)$ 

\\_\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tmb\_missing\_p:
\\_\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tmb\_missing: TF

This checks if a extra top mark ("extra-tmb") is needed. According to the analysis this the case if the firstmarks start with e- or b+. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```
261 { \prg_return_true: }
262 { \prg_return_false: }
263 }

(End definition for \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF.)
```

\\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tme\_missing\_p: \\_tag\_check\_if\_mc\_tme\_missing: <u>TF</u> This checks if a extra bottom mark ("extra-tme") is needed. According to the analysis this the case if the botmarks starts with b+. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

## Part II

# The tagpdf-user module Code related to Lagrange user commands and document commands Part of the tagpdf package

## 1 Setup commands

 $\time { imes tagpdfsetup { imes key val list}}$ 

This is the main setup command to adapt the behaviour of tagpdf. It can be used in the preamble and in the document (but not all keys make sense there).

#### 2 Commands related to mc-chunks

 $\verb|\tagmcbegin | tagmcbegin | {\langle key-val \rangle}|$ 

\tagmcend \tagmcend

 $\t \sum_{i=1}^{n} tagmcuse {\langle label \rangle}$ 

These are wrappers around \tag\_mc\_begin:n, \tag\_mc\_end: and \tag\_mc\_use:n. The commands and their argument are documentated in the tagpdf-mc module. In difference to the expl3 commands, \tagmcbegin issues also an \ignorespaces, and \tagmcend will issue in horizontal mode an \unskip.

 $\time {true code} {de} {true code}$ 

This is a wrapper around \tag\_mc\_if\_in:TF. and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdflatex as lualatex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the expl3 command it is not expandable.

The command is probably not of much use and will perhaps disappear in future versions. It normally makes more sense to push/pop an mc-chunk.

## 3 Commands related to structures

 $\begin{tagstructbegin } $$ \text{tagstructbegin } {\langle key-val \rangle}$ \\ \text{tagstructend} \\ \text{tagstructuse} \\ \text{tagstructuse} {\langle label \rangle}$ \\ \end{tagstructuse}$ 

These are direct wrappers around \tag\_struct\_begin:n, \tag\_struct\_end: and \tag\_struct\_use:n. The commands and their argument are documentated in the tagpdf-struct module.

## Debugging

 $\Sigma \$ 

This is a generic function to output various debugging helps. It not necessarly stops the compilation. The keys and their function are described below.

mc-data mc-data =  $\langle number \rangle$ 

This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout (and perhaps a second compilation), so typically should be issued after a newpage. The value is a positive integer and sets the first mc-shown. If no value is given, 1 is used and so all mc-chunks created so far are shown.

mc-current mc-current

This key shows the number and the tag of the currently open mc-chunk. If no chunk is open it shows only the state of the abs count. It works in all mode, but the output in luamode looks different.

struct-stack struct-stack = log|show

This key shows the current structure stack. With log the info is only written to the log-file, show stops the compilation and shows on the terminal. If no value is used, then the default is show.

#### 5 Extension commands

The following commands and code parts are not core command of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands.

The commands and keys should be view as experimental!

This part will be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved and so can change easily.

#### 5.1Fake space

\pdffakespace (lua-only) This provides a lua-version of the \pdffakespace primitive of pdftex.

#### 5.2 **Paratagging**

This is a first try to make use of the new paragraph hooks in a current LaTeX to automate the tagging of paragraph. It requires sane paragraph nesting, faulty code, e.g. a missing \par at the end of a low-level vbox can highly confuse the tagging. The tags should be carefully checked if this is used.

```
paratagging
```

```
paratagging = true|false
paratagging-show paratagging-show = true|false
```

This keys can be used in \tagpdfsetup and enable/disable paratagging. parataggingshow puts small red numbers at the begin and end of a paragraph. This is meant as a debugging help. The number are boxes and have a (tiny) height, so they can affect typesetting.

\tagpdfparaOn \tagpdfparaOff

These commands allow to enable/disable para tagging too and are a bit faster then \tagpdfsetup. But I'm not sure if the names are good.

#### 5.3 Header and footer

Header and footer are automatically excluded from tagging. This can for now to allow debugging be disabled with the following key, but probably this key will disappear again. If some real content is in the header and footer, tagging must be restarted there explicitly.

exclude-header-footer exclude-header-footer = true|false

#### 5.4 Link tagging

Links need a special structure and cross reference system. This is added through hooks of the l3pdfannot module and will work automatically if tagging is activated.

Links should (probably) have an alternative text in the Contents key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it. Currently the code simply adds the fix texts url and ref. Another text can be added by changing the dictionary value:

```
\pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
{ link/GoTo }
{ Contents }
{ (ref) }
```

# User commands and extensions of document commands

```
1 (00=tag)
 (*header)
 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-user} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
    {tagpdf - user commands}
  (/header)
```

# Setup and preamble commands

#### \tagpdfsetup

```
6 (*package)
  \NewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }
       \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup } { #1 }
(End definition for \tagpdfsetup. This function is documented on page 25.)
```

## 8 Commands for the mc-chunks

```
\tagmcbegin
  \tagmcend
              11 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
  \tagmcuse
              13
                     \tag_mc_begin:n {#1}%\ignorespaces
              14
              15
                \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcend { }
              17
              18
                     %\if_mode_horizontal: \unskip \fi: %
              19
                     \tag_mc_end:
              22
                \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcuse { m }
              23
              24
                     \tag_mc_use:n {#1}
              (End definition for \tagmcbegin, \tagmcend, and \tagmcuse. These functions are documented on page
```

\tagmcifinTF

This is a wrapper around \tag\_mc\_if\_in: and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdflatex as lualatex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the expl3 command it is not expandable.

(End definition for \tagmcifinTF. This function is documented on page ??.)

## 9 Commands for the structure

\tagstructbegin \tagstructend \tagstructuse

These are structure related user commands. There are direct wrapper around the expl3 variants.

(End definition for  $\t$ agstructbegin,  $\t$ agstructend, and  $\t$ agstructuse. These functions are documented on page 25.)

```
\tagpdfifluatexTF
\tagpdfifluatexT
\tagpdfifpdftexTF
```

I should deprecate them ...

```
46 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifluatexTF \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
47 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifluatexT \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
48 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagpdfifpdftexT \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
```

(End definition for  $\t tagpdfifluatexTF$ ,  $\t tagpdfifluatexT$ , and  $\t tagpdfifpdftexTF$ . These functions are documented on page  $\t ??$ .)

## 10 Debugging

**\ShowTagging** 

This is a generic command for various show commands. It takes a keyval list, the various keys are implemented below.

```
49 \NewDocumentCommand\ShowTagging { m }
50      {
51          \keys_set:nn { __tag / show }{ #1}
52
53     }
```

(End definition for \ShowTagging. This function is documented on page 26.)

mc-data

This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout, so typically should be issued after a newpage. With the optional argument the minimal number can be set.

(End definition for mc-data. This function is documented on page 26.)

mc-current

This shows some info about the current mc-chunk. It works in generic and lua-mode.

```
\lua_now:e
                          {
                             {\tt tex.print}
                               (tex.getattribute
                                 ({\tt luatexbase.attributes.g\_tag\_mc\_cnt\_attr}))
81
                          }
                     }
                     {
                        \lua_now:e
                          {
                            ltx.__tag.trace.log
                                "mc-current:~no~MC~open,~current~abscnt
                                 =\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"
91
92
                            texio.write_nl("")
93
                     }
                     {
                        \lua_now:e
                          {
                            ltx.__tag.trace.log
100
                                "mc-current:~abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:=="
101
102
                                 tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
103
104
                                 "~=>tag="
105
                                 tostring
                                   (ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from
109
                                     (tex.getattribute
                                        (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)))
111
                                 "="
113
114
                                 tex.getattribute
115
                                  (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)
                                 ,0
                             )
                            texio.write_nl("")
119
                     }
120
                 }
            }
             {
123
              \msg_note:nn{ tag }{ mc-current }
124
125
126
        }
     }
```

(End definition for mc-current. This function is documented on page 26.)

mc-marks It maps the mc-marks into the sequences and then shows them. This allows to inspect the

```
first and last mc-Mark on a page. It should only be used in the shipout (header/footer).
               128 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
               129
                      mc-marks .choice: ,
               130
                      mc-marks / show .code:n =
                           \__tag_mc_get_marks:
               133
               134
                           \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
                             \iow_term:n {Marks~from~this~page:~}
                           }
                           {
               138
                              \iow_term:n {Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
               139
               140
                          \seq_show: N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
               141
                          \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
               142
                           \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
               143
                              \iow_term:n {BDC~missing~on~this~page!}
                          \verb|\__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T|
               148
                              \iow_term:n {EMC~missing~on~this~page!}
               149
               150
                        },
               151
                      mc-marks / use .code:n =
               152
               153
                          \__tag_mc_get_marks:
               154
                          \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
               155
                           { Marks~from~this~page:~}
                           { Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
                          \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}\quad
                          \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}\quad
                          \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
               161
                             BDC~missing~
               162
               163
                           \_\_tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
               164
               165
                             EMC~missing
                           }
                        },
                     mc-marks .default:n = show
               169
               170
               (End definition for mc-marks. This function is documented on page ??.)
struct-stack
               171 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
               172
                       struct-stack .choice:
               173
                      \tt ,struct-stack / log .code:n = \seq_log:N \sl_tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
               174
                      ,struct-stack / show .code:n = \seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
                      ,struct-stack .default:n = show
```

```
177 }
```

(End definition for struct-stack. This function is documented on page 26.)

### 11 Commands to extend document commands

The following commands and code parts are not core command of tagpdf. The either provide work arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands. This part should be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved.

#### 11.1 Document structure

```
\__tag_add_document_structure:n
```

```
activate
```

```
178 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_document_structure:n #1
179
      \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}{\tagstructbegin{tag=#1}}
180
      \hook_gput_code:nnn{tagpdf/finish/before}{tagpdf}{\tagstructend}
181
   }
182
183 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup}
184
      activate
                 .code:n =
185
186
         \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup }
187
           { activate-mc,activate-tree,activate-struct }
         \__tag_add_document_structure:n {#1}
       },
    activate .default:n = Document
191
```

(End definition for  $\_\text{tag_add_document_structure:n}$  and activate. This function is documented on page  $\ref{eq:condense}$ .)

#### 11.2 Fake space

\pdffakespace

We need a luatex variant for \pdffakespace. This should probably go into the kernel at some time

(End definition for  $\protect$ 

## 11.3 Paratagging

The following are some simple commands to enable/disable paratagging. Probably one should add some checks if we are already in a paragraph.

```
\l__tag_para_bool
                         At first some variables.
\l__tag_para_show_bool
                         200 \bool_new:N \l__tag_para_bool
      \g__tag_para_int
                         201 \bool_new:N \l__tag_para_show_bool
                         202 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_int
                          (End definition for \l__tag_para_bool, \l__tag_para_show_bool, and \g__tag_para_int.)
                         These keys enable/disable locally paratagging, and the debug modus. It can affect the
           paratagging
                         typesetting if paratagging-show is used. The small numbers are boxes and they have a
      paratagging-show
                          (small) height.
                         203 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                         204
                              {
                                                   .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
                         205
                                paratagging
                                paratagging-show .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_show_bool,
                              }
                         207
                          (End definition for paratagging and paratagging-show. These functions are documented on page 27.)
                              This fills the para hooks with the needed code.
                            \AddToHook{para/begin}
                              {
                         210
                               \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
                         211
                         212
                                    \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_int
                         213
                         214
                                    \tag_struct_begin:n {tag=P}
                                    \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
                                     { \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
                                       \llap{\color_select:n{red}\tiny\int_use:N\g__tag_para_int\ }
                         217
                         218
                                       \tag_mc_end:
                         219
                                    \tag_mc_begin:n {tag=P}
                         220
                         223
                            \AddToHook{para/end}
                         224
                              {
                         225
                                 \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
                                     \tag_mc_end:
                                     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
                                       { \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
                                         \rlap{\color_select:n{red}\tiny\ \int_use:N\g__tag_para_int}
                         230
                                         \tag_mc_end:
                                       }
```

\tag\_struct\_end:

234 235

}

In generic mode we need the additional code from the ptagging tests.

```
\AddToHook{begindocument/before}
237
     \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
238
239
           \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@footins
240
241
              \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@footins
                { \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream: Nn \footins {footnote} }
              \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@cclv
                   __tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\token_to_str:N \@makecol\c_space_tl\the\c@j
                  \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \@cclv {main}
                }
              \tl_put_right:Nn \@mult@ptagging@hook
                {
                  \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\string\page@sofar}
251
                  \process@cols\mult@gfirstbox
                      \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \count@ {multicol}
                  \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn \mult@rightbox {multicol}
256
257
           }
258
       }
259
260
```

\tagpdfparaOn \tagpdfparaOff This two command switch para mode on and off. \tagpdfsetup could be used too but is longer.

```
\newcommand\tagpdfparaOn {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_bool}
\newcommand\tagpdfparaOff{\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool}
```

(End definition for \tagpdfparaOn and \tagpdfparaOff. These functions are documented on page 27.)

\tagpdfsuppressmarks

This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

#### 11.4 Header and footer

Header and footer should normally be tagged as artifacts. The following code requires the new hooks. For now we allow to disable this function, but probably the code should always there at the end. TODO check if Pagination should be changeable.

```
265 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:{}
266 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:{}
267 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:{}
  \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:{}
269
  \AddToHook{begindocument}
270
     \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@head
273
        \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:}
274
        \tl_put_left:\n \@kernel@after@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:}
275
        \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:}
276
        \tl_put_left:\n \@kernel@after@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:}
278
   }
279
280
  \bool_new:N \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
281
   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
282
283
       \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
       \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
       \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
286
       \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=pagination}
287
       \tag_stop_group_begin:
288
   }
289
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
290
291
       \tag_stop_group_end:
292
       \tag_mc_end:
293
       \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
   }
295
296
297 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
298
       exclude-header-footer .choice:,
299
       exclude-header-footer / true .code:n =
300
301
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
302
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
303
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
       },
       exclude-header-footer / false .code:n =
307
308
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \prg_do_nothing:
309
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
310
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \prg_do_nothing:
311
          \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
312
        },
313
```

```
exclude-header-footer .default:n = true,
exclude-header-footer .initial:n = true
}
```

#### 11.5 Links

We need to close and reopen mc-chunks around links. Currently we handle URI and GoTo (internal) links. Links should have an alternative text in the Contents key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it.

```
\hook_gput_code:nnn
     {pdfannot/link/URI/before}
318
     {tagpdf}
319
320
       \tag_mc_end_push:
       \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
       \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
       \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
324
         { link/URI }
325
         { StructParent }
326
         { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
327
     }
328
329
  \hook_gput_code:nnn
330
331
     {pdfannot/link/URI/after}
332
     {tagpdf}
333
        \tag_struct_insert_annot:xx {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
334
335
        \tag_mc_end:
        \tag_struct_end:
336
        \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
338
339
   \hook_gput_code:nnn
340
     {pdfannot/link/GoTo/before}
341
     {tagpdf}
344
        \tag_mc_end_push:
345
        \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
346
        \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
        \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
347
          { link/GoTo }
348
          { StructParent }
349
          { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
350
     }
351
   \hook_gput_code:nnn
353
     {pdfannot/link/GoTo/after}
355
     {tagpdf}
       \tag_struct_insert_annot:xx {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
357
       \tag_mc_end:
358
       \tag_struct_end:
359
       \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
360
```

```
361
362 }
363
364 % "alternative descriptions " for PAX3. How to get better text here??
365 \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
366 { link/URI }
367 { Contents }
368 { (url) }
370 \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn
371 { link/GoTo }
372 { Contents }
373 { (ref) }
374
</package>
```

## Part III

# The tagpdf-tree module Commands trees and main dictionaries Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 (@@=tag)
2 (*header)
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-tree-code} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to writing trees and dictionaries to the pdf}
```

# 1 Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code

The code to finish the structure is in a hook. This will perhaps at the end be a kernel hook. TODO check right place for the code The pdfmanagement code is the kernel hook after shipout/lastpage so all code affecting it should be before. Objects can be written later, at least in pdf mode.

### 1.1 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot

The StructTreeRoot and the MarkInfo entry must be added to the catalog. We do it late so that we can win, but before the pdfmanagement hook.

```
__tag/struct/0 This is the object for the root object, the StructTreeRoot

20 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/struct/0 }{ dict }

(End definition for __tag/struct/0.)

21 \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/lastpage}{tagpdf}

22  {

23  \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool

24  {

25  \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Catalog / MarkInfo } { Marked } { true }

\text{pdfmanagement_add:nnx}
```

# 1.2 Writing structure elements

The following commands are needed to write out the structure.

\\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structtreeroot:

```
This writes out the root object.
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
33
        \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
34
          { g_tag_struct_0_prop }
35
          { ParentTree }
          { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/parenttree } }
        \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
          { g__tag_struct_0_prop }
          { RoleMap }
          { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/rolemap } }
41
        \__tag_struct_write_obj:n { 0 }
43
(End definition for \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:.)
```

\\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_structelements:

This writes out the other struct elems, the absolute number is in the counter

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag\_tree\_write\_structelements:.)$ 

### 1.3 ParentTree

\_\_tag/tree/parenttree

The object which will hold the parenttree

```
51 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/parenttree }{ dict }
```

(End definition for \_\_tag/tree/parenttree.)

The ParentTree maps numbers to objects or (if the number represents a page) to arrays of objects. The numbers refer to two dictinct types of entries: page streams and real objects like annotations. The numbers must be distinct and ordered. So we rely on abspage for the pages and put the real objects at the end. We use a counter to have a chance to get the correct number if code is processed twice.

\c@g\_\_tag\_parenttree\_obj\_int

This is a counter for the real objects. It starts at the absolute last page value. It relies on l3ref.

```
52 \newcounter { g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }
53 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
54 {
```

```
55
                                                                                    \int_gset:Nn
                                                                                        \c@g\_tag\_parenttree\_obj\_int
                                                                     56
                                                                                        { \__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{abspage}{100} }
                                                                     57
                                                                     58
                                                                     (End definition for \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int.)
                                                                               We store the number/object references in a tl-var. If more structure is needed one
                                                                     could switch to a seq.
     \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
                                                                     59 \t_new:N \g_tag_parenttree_objr_tl
                                                                     (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\g_tag_parenttree_objr_tl|)
                                                                    This command stores a StructParent number and a objref into the tl var. This is only
                    \verb|\__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn|
                                                                     for objects like annotations, pages are handled elsewhere.
                                                                     60 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn #1 #2 %#1 StructParent number, #2 objref
                                                                     61
                                                                                    \tl_gput_right:Nx \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
                                                                     62
                                                                     6.3
                                                                                             #1 \c_space_t1 #2 ^^J
                                                                     64
                                                                     65
                                                                     (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn.|)
                    \l tag parenttree content tl
                                                                     A tl-var which will get the page related parenttree content.
                                                                     67 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
                                                                     (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\l_tag_parenttree_content_tl|)
\__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
                                                                    This is the main command to assemble the page related entries of the parent tree. It
                                                                     wanders through the pages and the mcid numbers and collects all mcid of one page.
                                                                     68
                                                                          \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
                                                                     69
                                                                               {
                                                                     70
                                                                                    \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{abspage}{-1}} %not quite clear i.
                                                                     71
                                                                                             \prop_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
                                                                                             \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\__tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn{tagmcabs}{-1}}
                                                                                                 {
                                                                                                      %mcid###1
                                                                                                      \int compare:nT
                                                                                                           {\cluster \{\cluster \cluster \cluster
                                                                                                           {% ves
                                                                                                                \prop put:Nxx
                                                                                                                    \l__tag_tmpa_prop
                                                                                                                    {\_\text{tag\_ref\_value:enn\{mcid-\#\#\#1\}\{tagmcid\}\{-1\}\}}
                                                                                                                    {\prop_item:Nn \g_tag_mc_parenttree_prop {####1}}
                                                                                                 }
                                                                                             \tl_put_right:Nx\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
                                                                                                      \int \int d^2 t dt dt
                                                                     88
                                                                                                      [\c_space_tl %]
                                                                     89
```

```
\int_step_inline:nnnn
                                    {0}
                        92
                                    {1}
                        93
                                    { \prop\_count:N \l_tag_tmpa\_prop -1 }
                                     {
                                       \prop_get:NnNTF \l__tag_tmpa_prop {####1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
                                         {% page#1:mcid##1:\l__tag_tmpa_tl :content
                                           \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
                                             {
                                               101
                                                  \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l__tag_tmpa_tl }
                       102
                       103
                                               \c_space_t1
                       104
                       105
                                         }
                       106
                                           \msg_warning:nn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
                                         }
                                  \tl_put_right:Nn
                                     \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
                                     {%[
                                      ]^^J
                       114
                                    }
                       115
                                }
                       116
                            }
                       117
                        (End definition for \__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:.)
\ tag tree lua fill parenttree:
                        This is a special variant for luatex. lua mode must/can do it differently.
                          \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
                       119
                               \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
                       120
                                {
                       121
                                  \lua_now:e
                       122
                                    {
                       123
                                      ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree
                       124
                                           126
                                    }
                       128
                                }
                       129
                            }
                        (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:.)
                       This combines the two parts and writes out the object. TODO should the check for lua
  \ tag tree write parenttree:
                        be moved into the backend code?
                       131 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
                            {
                       132
                              \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
                       133
                                {
                       134
```

}

90

91

```
\__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:

\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
\[
\]
```

#### 1.4 Rolemap dictionary

The Rolemap dictionary describes relations between new tags and standard types. The main part here is handled in the role module, here we only define the command which writes it to the PDF.

```
__tag/tree/rolemap At first we reserve again an object.

146 \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/rolemap }{ dict }

(End definition for __tag/tree/rolemap.)
```

\_\_tag\_tree\_write\_rolemap: This writes out the rolemap, basically it simply pushes out the dictionary which has been filled in the role module.

#### 1.5 Classmap dictionary

Classmap and attributes are setup in the struct module, here is only the code to write it out. It should only done if values have been used.

```
\__tag_tree_write_classmap:
                               154 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_classmap:
                                      \t1_clear:N \1_tag_tmpa_t1
                                      \verb|\seq_gremove_duplicates:N \g_tag_attr_class_used_seq|\\
                               157
                                      \seq_set_map:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
                               158
                               159
                                           /##1\c_space_t1
                               160
                               161
                                             \prop_item:Nn
                               162
                                               \g_tag_attr_entries_prop
                               163
                                               {##1}
```

```
>>
165
         }
166
       \t1_set:Nx \1_tag_tmpa_t1
167
         {
168
            \seq_use:Nn
169
              \l__tag_tmpa_seq
170
              { \iow_newline: }
171
172
       \tl_if_empty:NF
173
         \l_tag_tmpa_tl
174
175
            \pdf_object_new:nn { __tag/tree/classmap }{ dict }
176
            \pdf_object_write:nx
              { __tag/tree/classmap }
178
              { \1__tag_tmpa_tl }
179
            \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
180
              { g_tag_struct_0_prop }
181
              { ClassMap }
              { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/classmap } }
         }
(End definition for \__tag_tree_write_classmap:.)
```

#### 1.6 Namespaces

Namespaces are handle in the role module, here is the code to write them out. Namespaces are only relevant for pdf2.0 but we don't care, it doesn't harm.

```
__tag/tree/namespaces
                          186 \pdf_object_new:nn{ __tag/tree/namespaces }{array}
                          (End definition for __tag/tree/namespaces.)
 \ tag tree write namespaces:
                          187 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
                               {
                          188
                                  \prop_map_inline:Nn \g_tag_role_NS_prop
                                      \pdfdict_if_empty:nF {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_##1_dict}
                          191
                                           \pdf_object_write:nx {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}
                                                \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_##1_dict}
                          195
                          196
                                           \pdfdict_gput:nnx{g__tag_role/Namespace_##1_dict}
                          197
                                             {RoleMapNS}{\pdf_object_ref:n {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}}
                          198
                                      \pdf_object_write:nx{tag/NS/##1}
                                        {
                                            \label{local_pdfdict_use:n} $$ \left\{ g_{tag_role} \right\} = \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \right\} $$
                          202
                          203
                          204
                                  \pdf_object_write:nx {__tag/tree/namespaces}
                          205
                          206
```

# 1.7 Finishing the structure

This assembles the various parts. TODO (when tabular are done or if someone requests it): IDTree

\\_\_tag\_finish\_structure:

```
210 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_finish_structure:
       \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
212
213
           \hook_use:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
214
           \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
215
           \__tag_tree_write_rolemap:
           \__tag_tree_write_classmap:
           \__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
           \__tag_tree_write_structelements: %this is rather slow!!
           \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
220
221
(End definition for \__tag_finish_structure:.)
```

# 1.8 StructParents entry for Page

We need to add to the Page resources the StructParents entry, this is simply the absolute page number.

```
223 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
224
       \verb|\bool_if:NT\g_tag_active_tree_bool|
225
226
          \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before} { tagpdf/structparents }
228
               \pdfmanagement_add:nnx
229
                 { Page }
230
                 { StructParents }
                 { \int_eval:n { \g_shipout_readonly_int} }
233
     7
236 (/package)
```

# Part IV

# The tagpdf-mc-shared module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by all modes

# Part of the tagpdf package

# 1 Public Commands

These commands insert the end code of the marked content. They don't end a group and in generic mode it doesn't matter if they are in another group as the starting commands. In generic mode both commands check if they are correctly nested and issue a warning if not.

 $\text{tag_mc\_use:n } \text{tag\_mc\_use:n} \{\langle label \rangle\}$ 

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time.

\tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n \\dag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_end:

New: 2019-11-20

This command pair creates a group with an artifact marker at the begin and the end. Inside the group the tagging commands are disabled. It allows to mark a complete region as artifact without having to worry about user commands with tagging commands.  $\langle name \rangle$  should be a value allowed also for the artifact key. It pushes and pops mcchunks at the begin and end. TODO: document is in taggdf.tex

 $\label{local_push:} $$ \ag_mc_end_push: $$ \ag_mc_begin_pop:n{$\langle key-values \rangle$} $$$ 

New: 2021-04-22 If there is an open mc chunk, \tag\_mc\_end\_push: ends it and pushes its tag of the (global) stack. If there is no open chunk, it puts -1 on the stack (for debugging) \tag\_- mc\_begin\_pop:n removes a value from the stack. If it is different from -1 it opens a tag with it. The reopened mc chunk looses info like the alttext for now.

#### 2 Public keys

The following keys can be used with \tag\_mc\_begin:n, \tagmcbegin, \tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n,

tag This key is required, unless artifact is used. The value is a tag like P or H1 without a slash at the begin, this is added by the code. It is possible to setup new tags. The value of the key is expanded, so it can be a command. The expansion is passed unchanged to the PDF, so it should with a starting slash give a valid PDF name (some ascii with numbers like H4 is fine).

artifact. This will setup the marked content as an artifact. The key should be used for content that should be ignored. The key can take one of the values pagination, layout, page, background and notype (this is the default).

raw This key allows to add more entries to the properties dictionary. The value must be correct, low-level PDF. E.g. raw=/Alt (Hello) will insert an alternative Text.

alttext alttext-o

This key inserts an /Alt value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. With alttext-o the value is expanded once.

actualtext

This key inserts an /ActualText value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. actualtext-o The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. With actualtexto the value is expanded once.

label This key sets a label by which one can call the marked content later in another structure (if it has been stashed with the stash key). Internally the label name will start with tagpdf-.

stash This "stashes" an mc-chunk: it is not inserted into the current structure. It should be normally be used along with a label to be able to use the mc-chunk in another place.

The code is splitted into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

#### 3 Marked content code – shared

```
1 (@@=tag)
 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-shared} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
   {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks -
     code shared by generic and luamode }
6 (/header)
```

#### 3.1 Variables and counters

MC chunks must be counted. I use a latex counter for the absolute count, so that it is added to \cl@@ckpt and restored e.g. in tabulars and align. \int\_new:N \c@g\_@@\_MCID\_int and \tl\_put\_right:Nn\cl@@ckpt{\@elt{g\_uf\_test\_int}} would work too, but as the name is not expl3 then too, why bother? The absolute counter can be used to label and to check if the page counter needs a reset.

```
g__tag_MCID_abs_int

√*shared

                                8 \newcounter { g_tag_MCID_abs_int }
                               (End definition for g__tag_MCID_abs_int.)
     \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
                               A (expandable) function to get the current value of the cnt.
                                9 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: { \int_use:N \c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int }
                               (End definition for \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:.)
\g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
                               The following hold the temporary by page number assigned to a mc. It must be defined
                               in the shared code to avoid problems with labels.
                               int_new:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
                               (End definition for \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int.)
                              This booleans record if a mc is open, to test nesting.
         \g__tag_in_mc_bool
                               11 \bool_new:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
                               (End definition for \g_tag_in_mc_bool.)
                               For every chunk we need to know the structure it is in, to record this in the parent tree.
 \g_tag_mc_parenttree_prop
                               We store this in a property.
                               key: absolute number of the mc (tagmcabs)
                               value: the structure number the mc is in
                               12 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
                               (End definition for \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop.)
                               Some commands (e.g. links) want to close a previous mc and reopen it after they did
 \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
                               their work. For this we create a stack:
                               13 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq
                               (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\g_tag_mc_parenttree_prop.|)
\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl Artifacts can have various types like Pagination or Layout. This stored in this variable.
                               14 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
                               (End definition for \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl.)
                               This booleans store the stash and artifact status of the mc-chunk.
  \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
   \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
                               15 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
                               16 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
                               (End definition for \l tag mc key stash bool and \l tag mc artifact bool.)
```

```
\lambda_tag_mc_key_tag_t1 Variables used by the keys. \lambda_00_mc_key_properties_t1 will collect a number of values. TODO: should this be a pdfdict now?
\lambda_tag_mc_key_label_t1 \lambda_tl_new:N \lambda_tag_mc_key_tag_t1
\lambda_tag_mc_key_properties_t1 \lambda_tl_new:N \lambda_tag_mc_key_tag_t1
\lambda_tl_new:N \lambda_tag_mc_key_label_t1
\lambda_tl_new:N \lambda_tag_mc_key_properties_t1
```

#### 3.2 Functions

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mc\_label:n

The commands labels a mc-chunk. It is used if the user explicitly labels the mc-chunk with the label key. The argument is the value provided by the user. It stores the attributes

tagabspage: the absolute page, \g\_shipout\_readonly\_int, tagmcabs: the absolute mc-counter \c@g\_@@\_MCID\_abs\_int,

tagmcid: the ID of the chunk on the page \g\_@@\_MCID\_tmp\_bypage\_int, this typically settles down after a second compilation. The reference command is defined in tagpdf.dtx and is based on l3ref.

```
21 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n
22  {
23    \__tag_ref_label:en{tagpdf-#1}{mc}
24  }
(End definition for \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n.)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_set\_label\_used:n

Unlike with structures we can't check if a labeled mc has been used by looking at the P key, so we use a dedicated csname for the test

```
25 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_set_label_used:n #1 %#1 labelname
26 {
27  \t1_new:c { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }
28  }
(End definition for \__tag_mc_set_label_used:n.)
```

\tag\_mc\_use:n

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time. The argument is a label name set with the label key.

```
TODO: is testing for struct the right test?

29 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 %#1: label name

30 {

31  \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T

32  {

33  \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \__tag_ref_value:nnn{tagpdf-#1}{tagmcabs}{}} }

34  \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_tmpa_tl

35  {

36  \msg_warning:nnn {tag} {mc-label-unknown} {#1}

37  }

38  {

39  \cs_if_free:cTF { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }

40  {

41  \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
```

(End definition for \tag\_mc\_use:n. This function is documented on page 45.)

\tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n
\tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_end:

This opens an artifact of the type given in the argument, and then stops all tagging. It creates a group. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end.

```
50 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1
51
    \tag_mc_end_push:
52
    \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=#1}
53
    \tag_stop_group_begin:
54
55
56
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
58
    \tag_stop_group_end:
    \tag_mc_end:
    \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
62
```

(End definition for \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_begin:n and \tag\_mc\_artifact\_group\_end:. These functions are documented on page 45.)

```
\tag_mc_end_push:
\tag_mc_begin_pop:n
```

```
63 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push:
    {
64
         _tag_check_if_active_mc:T
65
66
              _tag_mc_if_in:TF
67
68
               \seq_gpush:Nx \g__tag_mc_stack_seq { \tag_get:n \{mc_tag\} \}
               \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn
                 { pushed }
                 { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
               \tag_mc_end:
             7
             {
               \seq_gpush:Nn \g_tag_mc_stack_seq \{-1\}
                 _tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn { pushed }{-1}
78
        }
    }
82 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1
83
       \_\_tag\_check\_if\_active\_mc:T
84
85
           \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_mc_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
86
```

(End definition for \tag\_mc\_end\_push: and \tag\_mc\_begin\_pop:n. These functions are documented on page 45.)

### 3.3 Keys

This are the keys where the code can be shared between the modes.

tash the two internal artifact keys are use to define the public artifact.

```
__artifact-bool
                 102 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
__artifact-type
                       {
                 103
                        stash
                                                    .bool_set:N
                                                                    = \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool,
                  104
                                                   .bool_set:N
                        __artifact-bool
                                                                    = \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool,
                                                    .choice:,
                  106
                        __artifact-type
                         __artifact-type / pagination .code:n
                  107
                  108
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination }
                  109
                           },
                         __artifact-type / layout
                                                        .code:n
                  111
                           {
                  113
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Layout }
                  114
                           },
                         __artifact-type / page
                  115
                                                        .code:n
                  116
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Page }
                  117
                           },
                  118
                         __artifact-type / background .code:n
                  119
                  120
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Background }
                  121
                           },
                         __artifact-type / notype
                                                        .code:n
                  123
                  124
                           {
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
                  125
                           },
                         __artifact-type /
                                                 .code:n
                  128
                             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
                  129
                  130
                      }
                  131
```

(End definition for stash,  $\_$ artifact-bool, and  $\_$ artifact-type. This function is documented on page 73.)

132 (/shared)

## Part V

# The tagpdf-mc-generic module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode Part of the tagpdf package

#### Marked content code – generic mode 1

```
1 (00=tag)
2 (*generic)
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
 {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
```

#### Variables 1.1

\g\_\_tag\_MCID\_byabspage\_prop

This property will hold the current maximum on a page it will contain key-value of type  $\langle abspagenum \rangle {=} \langle max\ mcid \rangle$ 

```
6 (*generic)
7 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
(End\ definition\ for\ \g_tag_MCID_byabspage\_prop.)
```

\l\_\_tag\_mc\_ref\_abspage\_tl

We need a ref-label system to ensure that the MCID cnt restarts at 0 on a new page This will be used to store the tagabspage attribute retrieved from a label.

```
8 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
                          (End definition for \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl.)
\verb|\label{localization}| \verb|\label{localization}| temporary variable
                           9 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
                          (End definition for \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_mc\_marks

a marks register to keep track of the mc's at page breaks and a sequence to keep track of the data for the continuation extra-tmb. We probably will need to track mc-marks in more than one stream, so the seq contains the name of the stream.

```
10 \newmarks \g__tag_mc_marks
(End definition for \g__tag_mc_marks.)
```

\g tag mc footnote marks seq \g tag mc multicol marks seq

\g\_\_tag\_mc\_main\_marks\_seq Each stream has an associated global seq variable holding the bottom marks from the/a previous chunk in the stream. We provide three by default: main, footnote and multicol. TODO: perhaps an interface for more streams will be needed.

```
11 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq
13 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq
```

```
(End\ definition\ for\ \g_tag_mc_main_marks_seq,\ \g_tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq,\ and\ \g_tag_mc_main_marks_seq) multicol_marks_seq.)
```

\l\_\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq
\l\_\_tag\_mc\_botmarks\_seq

The marks content contains a number of data which we will have to access and compare, so we will store it locally in two sequences. topmarks is unusable in LaTeX so we ignore it.

```
14 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
15 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
(End definition for \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq and \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq.)
```

#### 1.2 Functions

\\_\_tag\_mc\_begin\_marks:nn
 \\_tag\_mc\_artifact\_begin\_marks:n
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_end\_marks:

Generic mode need to set marks for the page break and split stream handling. We always set two marks to be able to detect the case when no mark is on a page/galley. MC-begin commands will set (b,-,data) and (b,+,data), MC-end commands will set (e,-,data) and (e,+,data).

```
16 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 label
17
    {
      \tex_marks:D \g_tag_mc_marks
18
          b-, %first of begin pair
          \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
          \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
          #1, %tag
          \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
          #2, %label
25
26
      \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
27
28
          b+, % second of begin pair
          \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
30
31
           \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
          #1, %tag
          \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
34
          #2, %label
35
    }
36
  \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn {oo}
37
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n #1 %#1 type
39
      \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
40
41
          b-, %first of begin pair
42
          \int_use:N\c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int, \mc-num
          -1, %structure num
45
          #1 %type
46
      \tex_marks:D \g_tag_mc_marks
47
48
          b+, %first of begin pair
49
          \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
50
          -1, %structure num
```

```
#1 %Type
                           53
                               }
                           54
                           55
                             \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_end_marks:
                           56
                           57
                                 \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
                           58
                                     e-, %first of end pair
                                     \int_use:N\c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int, \mc-num
                                      \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
                           63
                                 \verb|\tex_marks:D \ \g_tag_mc_marks|
                           64
                           65
                                   {
                                     e+, %second of end pair
                           66
                                     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
                                      \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
                           68
                           69
                           end_marks:.)
                          This disables the marks. They can't be reenabled, so it should only be used in groups.
\__tag_mc_disable_marks:
                           71 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_disable_marks:
                           72
                           73
                                \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn \use_none:nn
                                \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \use_none:n
                                \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_end_marks: \prg_do_nothing:
                           (End definition for \__tag_mc_disable_marks:.)
                          This stores the current content of the marks in the sequences. It naturally should only
    \__tag_mc_get_marks:
                           be used in places where it makes sense.
                           77 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_get_marks:
                              {
                                \exp_args:NNx
                                \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
                           80
                           81
                                  { \tex_firstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
                                \exp_args:NNx
                           82
                                \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
                           83
                                  { \text{\tex\_botmarks:D} \ \g_tag_mc_marks } 
                           84
                           (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_mc_get_marks:.)
                          This inserts the mc-chunk \langle mc\text{-}num \rangle into the structure struct-num after the \langle mc\text{-}prev \rangle.
     \__tag_mc_store:nnn
                           The structure must already exist. The additional mod dictionary is stored in a property.
                           The item is retrieved when the kid entry is built. We test if there is already an addition
                           and append if needed.
                           86 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_store:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 mc-prev, #2 mc-num #3 structure-
                             num
                              {
```

```
%\prop_show:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
       \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
89
90
           \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl \__tag_struct_mcid_d.
91
         }
92
         {
93
           \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}}
         7
       \prop_gput:Nxx \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
         {#2}
97
         {#3}
98
     7
aa
100 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_store:nnn {xxx}
(End definition for \__tag_mc_store:nnn.)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tmb:n
\\_\_tag\_mc\_insert\_extra\_tme:n

These two functions should be used in the output routine at the place where a mc-literal could be missing due to a page break or some other split. They check (with the help of the marks) if a extra-tmb or extra-tme is needed. The tmb command stores also the mc into the structure, the tme has to store the data for a following extra-tmb. The argument takes a stream name like main or footnote to allow different handling there. The content of the marks must be stored before (with \@@\_mc\_get\_marks: or manually) into \l\_@@\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq and \l\_@@\_mc\_botmarks\_seq so that the tests can use them.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n #1 % #1 stream: e.g. main or footnote
101
    {
102
        \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ first~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}}
        \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ bot~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}}
        \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF
105
106
            \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ ~ missing~ --~ inserted}
107
           %test if artifact
108
            \int_compare:nNnTF { \eq_item:cn { g_tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3} } = {-}
109
  1}
                 \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4} }
                 \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
             }
             {
                 \exp_args:Nx
                 117
                     \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4}
118
                   7
119
                 \str if eq:eeTF
                   {
                     \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {5}
                   }
                   {}
125
                     %store
126
                     \__tag_mc_store:xxx
128
                         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {2}
129
```

```
130
                         {
                          \int_eval:n{\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int} }
                           \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3}
134
                    }
135
                    {
136
                       %stashed -> warning!!
                    }
              }
          }
140
141
               tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ not~ missing}
142
143
144
145
   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n #1 % #1 stream, eg. main or footnote
146
147
      \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ ~ missing~ --~ inserted}
          \seq_gset_eq:cN
152
            {g\_\_tag\_mc\_\#1\_marks\_seq}
153
            \label{local_local_local_problem} $$1__tag_mc_botmarks_seq$
154
        }
155
156
           \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ not~ missing}
157
158
159
   }
(End definition for \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n and \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n.)
```

#### 1.3 Looking at MC marks in boxes

\\_\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs:Nn

Assumptions:

- test for tagging active outside;
- mark retrieval also outside.

This takes a box register as its first argument (or the register number in a count register, as used by multicol). It adds an extra tmb at the top of the box if necessary and similarly an extra tme at the end. This is done by adding hboxes in a way that the positioning and the baseline of the given box is not altered. The result is written back to the box.

The second argument is the stream this box belongs to und is currently either main for the main galley, footnote for footnote note text, or multicol for boxes produced for columns in that environment. Other streams may follow over time.

```
160 \cs_new:Npn\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 #2 {
161  \vbadness \@M
162  \vfuzz  \c_max_dim
163  \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn #1 { \box_ht:N #1 } {
164  \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n {#2} }
```

The box placed on the top gets zero size and thus will not affect the box dimensions of the box we are modifying.

```
//o \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim
//o \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim
```

The box added at the bottom will get the depth of the original box. This way we can arrange that from the outside everything looks as before.

```
\box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box \c_zero_dim \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box \{ \box_dp:N #1 }
```

We need to set \boxmaxdepth in case the original box has an unusually large depth, otherwise that depth is not preserved when we string things together.

```
\boxmaxdepth \@maxdepth \\box_use_drop:N \l__tag_tmpa_box \\vbox_unpack_drop:N #1
```

Back up by the depth of the box as we add that later again.

```
\tex_kern:D -\box_dp:N \l__tag_tmpb_box
```

And we don't want any glue added when we add the box.

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn.|)$ 

\\_\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs\_to\_stream:Nn

This is the main command to add mc to the stream. It is therefor guarded by the mc-boolean.

If we aren't in the main stream then processing is a bit more complicated because to get at the marks in the box we need to artifically split it and then look at the split marks.

First argument is the box to update and the second is the "stream". In lua mode the command is a no-op.

```
182 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2
183 {
184 \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T {
```

First set up a temp box for trial splitting.

```
\vbadness\maxdimen
\box_set_eq:NN \l__tag_tmpa_box #1
```

Split the box to the largest size available. This should give us all content (but to be sure that there is no issue we could test out test box is empty now (not done).

```
\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_box \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_max_dim
```

As a side effect of this split we should now have the first and bottom split marks set up. We use this to set up \l\_\_tag\_mc\_firstmarks\_seq

```
\exp_args:NNx
\seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
{ \tex_splitfirstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
```

Some debugging info:

```
191 % \iow_term:n { First~ mark~ from~ this~ box: }
192 % \seq_log:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
```

If this mark was empty then clearly the bottom mark will too be empty. Thus in this case we make use of the saved bot mark from the previous chunk. Note that if this is the first chunk in the stream the global seq would contain a random value, but then we can't end in this branch because the basis assumption is that streams are properly marked up so the first chunk would always have a mark at the beginning!

```
\seq_if_empty:NTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq

{

\__tag_check_typeout_v:n

{

No~ marks~ so~ use~ saved~ bot~ mark:~

\seq_use:cn \{g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq\} \{,~\} \iow_newline:

}

\seq_set_eq:Nc \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq \{g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq\}

\seq_set_eq:Nc \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq \{g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq\}
```

We also update the bot mark to the same value so that we can later apply \\_\_tag\_add\_-missing\_mcs:Nn with the data structures in place (see assumptions made there).

```
201 \seq_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
202 }
```

If there was a first mark then there is also a bot mark (and it can't be the same as our marks always come in pairs). So if that branch is chosen we update \l\_\_tag\_mc\_-botmarks\_seq from the bot mark.

Finally we call \\_\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs:Nn to add any missing tmb/tme as needed,

```
212  \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 {#2}
213 %%
214  \seq_gset_eq:cN {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} \1__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
215 %%
216  }
217 }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs\_to\_stream:Nn.)

```
\__tag_mc_if_in_p:
\__tag_mc_if_in: TF
\tag_mc_if_in_p:
\tag_mc_if_in: TF
```

This is a test if a mc is open or not. It depends simply on a global boolean: mc-chunks are added linearly so nesting should not be relevant.

One exception are header and footer (perhaps they are more, but for now it doesn't seem so, so there are no dedicated code to handle this situation): When they are built and added to the page we could be both inside or outside a mc-chunk. But header and footer should ignore this and not push/pop or warn about nested mc. It is therefore important there to set and reset the boolean manually. See the tagpddocu-patches.sty for an example.

\\_tag\_mc\_bmc:n
\\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nn
\\_tag\_mc\_bdc:nx

These are the low-level commands. There are now equal to the pdfmanagement commands generic mode, but we use an indirection in case luamode need something else. change 04.08.2018: the commands do not check the validity of the arguments or try to escape them, this should be done before using them.

```
226 % #1 tag, #2 properties
227 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_bmc:n \pdf_bmc:n
228 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_emc: \pdf_emc:
229 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_bdc:nn \pdf_bdc:nn
230 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {nx}

(End definition for \__tag_mc_bmc:n, \__tag_mc_emc:, and \__tag_mc_bdc:nn.)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:nn
 \\_\_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:n
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:nn
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:VV

This create a BDC mark with an /MCID key. Most of the work here is to get the current number value for the MCID: they must be numbered by page starting with 0 and then successively. The first argument is the tag, e.g. P or Span, the second is used to pass more properties. We also define a wrapper around the low-level command as luamode will need something different.

```
231 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn #1 #2
                     {
                                \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
                                \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
234
                                         ₹
235
                                                   \__tag_ref_value:enn %3 args
236
                                                                    mcid-\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
238
239
                                                           { tagabspage }
                                                           {-1}
241
242
                                \prop_get:NoNTF
243
                                         \g_tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
244
245
                                                  \label{local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_loc
246
                                         }
247
                                         \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
248
249
                                                 %key already present, use value for MCID and add 1 for the next
                                                  \int_gset:Nn \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int { \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl }
                                                   \__tag_prop_gput:Nxx
                                                           \g_tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
253
                                                           { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }
254
                                                           { \int_eval:n {\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl +1} }
255
```

```
}
256
257
           %key not present, set MCID to 0 and insert 1
           \int_gzero:N \g__tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
259
            \__tag_prop_gput:Nxx
              \g__tag_MCID_byabspage_prop
261
              { \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl }
              {1}
         }
       \__tag_ref_label:en
           mcid-\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
267
268
269
         fmc
        \__tag_mc_bdc:nx
          {#1}
          { \( /MCID^\\ int_eval:n \ \g_tag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int \}^\ \exp_not:n \ \ \ #2 \ \ }
272
273
   \cs_new_protected:Npn \c_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n #1
    {
       \_\text{tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn} \ \{\#1\} \ \{\}
276
278
   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 properties
279
280
       281
282
283
284 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn {VV}
(End\ definition\ for\ \ \_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:nn\ ,\ \ \_tag\_mc\_bdc\_mcid:n\ ,\ and\ \ \ \_tag\_mc\_handle\_mcid:nn\ .)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:n
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_stash:x

This is the handler which puts a mc into the the current structure. The argument is the number of the mc. Beside storing the mc into the structure, it also has to record the structure for the parent tree. The name is a bit confusing, it does not handle mc with the stash key .... TODO: why does luamode use it for begin + use, but generic mode only for begin?

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
       \__tag_check_mc_used:n {#1}
287
       \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
288
         { \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
289
         {#1}
290
      \prop_gput:Nxx \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
291
        {#1}
292
        { \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
293
294
  \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { x }
(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_mc_handle_stash:n.|)
```

\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:
\\_\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:n
\\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_artifact:N

Two commands to create artifacts, one without type, and one with. We define also a wrapper handler as luamode will need a different definition. TODO: perhaps later: more properties for artifacts

```
296 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:
                                                                                                                  {
                                                                                                 297
                                                                                                                             \__tag_mc_bmc:n {Artifact}
                                                                                                 299
                                                                                                           \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1
                                                                                                 300
                                                                                                 301
                                                                                                                             \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {Artifact}{/Type/#1}
                                                                                                 302
                                                                                                 303
                                                                                                             \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N #1
                                                                                                                       % #1 is a var containing the artifact type
                                                                                                                             \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
                                                                                                 307
                                                                                                                             \tl_if_empty:NTF #1
                                                                                                 308
                                                                                                                                    { \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: }
                                                                                                 309
                                                                                                                                    { \exp_args:NV\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1 }
                                                                                                 310
                                                                                                 311
                                                                                                   (End\ definition\ for\ \\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:\ ,\ \\_tag\_mc\_bmc\_artifact:n\ ,\ and\ \\_\_tag\_mc\_handle\_-like and legendary and legendary are likely and legendary and legendary are likely are likely are likely and legendary are likely are likely and legendary are likely are likely are likely are likely are likely and legendary are likely are likely are likely are likely are likely and likely are likely
                                                                                                 This allows to retrieve the active mc-tag. It is use by the get command.
\__tag_get_data_mc_tag:
                                                                                                 312 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
                                                                                                   (End definition for \__tag_get_data_mc_tag:.)
```

\tag\_mc\_begin:n
\tag\_mc\_end:

These are the core public commands to open and close an mc. They don't need to be in the same group or grouping level, but the code expect that they are issued linearly. The tag and the state is passed to the end command through a global var and a global boolean.

```
313 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
314
       \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
315
316
317
           \group_begin: %hm
           \__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
           \verb|\bool_gset_true:N \ \g_tag_in_mc_bool|
319
           \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc } {#1}
           \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
321
             { %handle artifact
                \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
323
               \exp_args:NV
324
                \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
             }
             { %handle mcid type
                \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
               \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:VV
                   \l_tag_mc_key_tag_tl
331
                   \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
332
               \_\tag_mc_begin_marks:oo\{\l_tag_mc_key_tag_tl\}\{\l_tag_mc_key_label_tl\}
               \tl_if_empty:NF {\l_tag_mc_key_label_tl}
333
                 {
334
                    \exp_args:NV
335
                    \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
336
```

```
\bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
338
339
                   \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
340
341
342
           \group_end:
343
344
    }
345
  \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
347
       \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
348
340
           \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
350
           \verb|\bool_gset_false:N \ \g_tag_in_mc_bool|
351
           352
           \__tag_mc_emc:
353
           \__tag_mc_end_marks:
354
355
```

 $(\textit{End definition for $$ \are begin:n and $$ $$ and $$ $$ are documented on page 45.)}$ 

#### 1.4 Keys

Definitions are different in luamode. tag and raw are expanded as \lua\_now:e in lua does it too and we assume that their values are safe.

```
tag
          raw
               357 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
     alttext
                       tag .code:n = % the name (H,P,Span) etc
   alttext-o
  actualtext
                                          \1__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
                           \t!
actualtext-o
                           \label{local_local_local_local_local_local} $$ \t_{g_tag_mc_key_tag_tl { \#1 }} $$
       label
                         },
               363
    artifact
                      raw
                            .code:n =
               364
                         {
               365
               366
                           \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
                         },
                       alttext .code:n = % Alt property
                            \str_set_convert:Nnon
               371
                              \l__tag_tmpa_str
                              { #1 }
               372
                              { default }
               373
                              { utf16/hex }
               374
                            \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
               375
                            \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
               376
                         },
               378
                       alttext-o .code:n
                                                 = % Alt property
               380
                            \str_set_convert:Noon
               381
                              \l__tag_tmpa_str
                              { #1 }
               382
```

```
{ default }
383
                                           { utf16/hex }
384
                                     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
385
                                     \label{local_tag_mc_key_properties_tl { l_tag_tmpa_str>~ }} $$ \t = \frac{1_tag_mc_key_properties_tl { l_tag_tmpa_str>~ }} $$
386
                             },
387
                      actualtext .code:n
                                                                                                          = % ActualText property
388
                              {
389
                                      \str_set_convert:Nnon
                                           \label{local_tag_tmpa_str} $$1__tag_tmpa_str$
                                           { #1 }
                                           { default }
                                           { utf16/hex }
394
                                     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /ActualText~< }</pre>
395
                                     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
396
397
                      actualtext-o .code:n
                                                                                                                 = % ActualText property
398
                              {
399
                                      \str_set_convert:Noon
400
                                            \l__tag_tmpa_str
                                           { #1 }
                                           { default }
                                           { utf16/hex }
                                     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /ActualText~< }</pre>
                                     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
                             },
407
                      label .tl_set:N
                                                                                                       = \label{local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_l
408
                       artifact .code:n
409
410
                              {
                                     \exp_args:Nnx
411
                                            \keys_set:nn
412
                                                   { __tag / mc }
413
                                                   { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1 }
414
                             },
415
                      artifact .default:n
                                                                                                       = {notype}
416
417
418 (/generic)
```

(End definition for tag and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part VI

# The tagpdf-mc-luacode module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific Part of the tagpdf package

The code is splitted into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

### 1 Marked content code – luamode code

luamode uses attributes to mark mc-chunks. The two attributes used are defined in the backend file. The backend also load the lua file, as it can contain functions needed elsewhere. The attributes for mc are global (between 0.6 and 0.81 they were local but this was reverted). The attributes are setup only in lua, and one should use the lua functions to set and get them.

```
g_@@_mc_type_attr: the value represent the type
g_@@_mc_cnt_attr: will hold the \c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int value
```

Handling attribute needs a different system to number the page wise mcid's: a \tagmcbegin ... \tagmcend pair no longer surrounds exactly one mc chunk: it can be split at page breaks. We know the included mcid(s) only after the ship out. So for the struct -> mcid mapping we need to record struct -> mc-cnt (in \g\_@@\_mc\_parenttree\_prop and/or a lua table and at shipout mc-cnt-> {mcid, mcid, ...} and when building the trees connect both.

Key definitions are overwritten for luatex to store that data in lua-tables. The data for the mc are in ltx.@@.mc[absnum]. The fields of the table are:

```
tag: the type (a string)
raw: more properties (string)
label: a string.
artifact: the presence indicates an artifact, the value (string) is the type.
kids: a array of tables
{1={kid=num2,page=pagenum1}, 2={kid=num2,page=pagenum2},...},
this describes the chunks the mc has been split to by the traversing code
parent: the number of the structure it is in. Needed to build the parent tree.

1 <@@=tag>
```

```
1 \langle QQ=tag \rangle

2 \langle *luamode \rangle

3 \langle ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua} {2021-07-03} {0.91}

4 \langle fagpdf - mc code only for the luamode }

5 \langle fagpdf - mc code only for the luamode }
```

The main function which wanders through the shipout box to inject the literals. if the new callback is there, it is used.

```
6 (*luamode)
7 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf/mc}
8 {
```

```
\verb|\bool_if:NT\g_tag_active_space_bool|
        {
10
           \lua_now:e
             {
12
              if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
13
                 luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
                 ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
15
                 end, "tagpdf")~
               end
             }
18
         \lua_now:e
            {
20
              if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
21
              token.get_next()~
              end
23
            }\@secondoftwo\@gobble
24
              {
                \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
                  {
                   \lua_now:e
                       { ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
              }
31
        }
32
      \verb|\bool_if:NT\g_tag_active_mc_bool|
33
        {
34
          \lua_now:e
35
             {
               if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
                 luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
                 ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
                 end, "tagpdf")~
41
               end
             }
42
         \lua_now:e
43
            {
44
              if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
45
46
              token.get_next()~
              end
            }\@secondoftwo\@gobble
                \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
51
                  {
                    \lua_now:e
52
                       { ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
53
                  }
54
             }
55
        }
56
    }
```

#### 1.1 Commands

\\_tag\_add\_missing\_mcs\_to\_stream:Nn

This command is used in the output routine by the ptagging code. It should do nothing in luamode.

```
58 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2 {}
                          (End definition for \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn.)
      \__tag_mc_if_in:
                          This tests, if we are in an mc, for attributes this means to check against a number.
        \tag_mc_if_in:
                          59 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
                               {
                          60
                                 \int_compare:nNnTF
                          61
                                   { -2147483647 }
                          62
                          63
                                   {\lua_now:e
                          64
                                       {
                          65
                                         tex.print(tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr))
                          66
                                   { \prg_return_false: }
                                   { \prg_return_true: }
                          70
                               }
                          71
                          73 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \__tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
                          (End definition for \__tag_mc_if_in: and \tag_mc_if_in:. This function is documented on page ??.)
                          This takes a tag name, and sets the attributes to the related number. It is not decided
\ tag mc lua set mc type attr:n
                          yet if this will be global or local, see the global-mc option.
\_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o
\ tag mc lua unset mc type attr:
                          74 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n % #1 is a tag name
                          75
                                 %TODO ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from("#1") seems not to return a suitable number??
                          76
                                 \tl_set:Nx\l__tag_tmpa_t1{\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from ("#1")} }
                          77
                                 \lua_now:e
                          78
                          79
                                   {
                                      tex.setattribute
                                       (
                                        "global",
                                        {\tt luatexbase.attributes.g\_tag\_mc\_type\_attr},
                                        \l__tag_tmpa_tl
                          85
                                   }
                          86
                                 \lua_now:e
                          87
                                   {
                          88
                                      tex.setattribute
                          89
                                         "global",
                                         luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
                          92
                          93
                                         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
                          94
                                   }
                          95
                               }
                          96
                          97
                             \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n { o }
                          98
                          99
                             \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
                          100
                               {
                          101
                          102
                                 \lua_now:e
```

```
103
                                             tex.setattribute
                                 104
                                 105
                                               (
                                                 "global",
                                 106
                                                 {\tt luatexbase.attributes.g\_tag\_mc\_type\_attr},
                                 107
                                                 -2147483647
                                 108
                                 109
                                          }
                                 110
                                         \lua_now:e
                                          {
                                             tex.setattribute
                                 113
                                 114
                                               (
                                                 "global",
                                 115
                                                 {\tt luatexbase.attributes.g\_tag\_mc\_cnt\_attr},
                                 116
                                                 -2147483647
                                 118
                                          }
                                 119
                                      }
                                 120
                                 (End definition for \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n and \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:.)
                                 These commands will in the finish code replace the dummy for a mc by the real mcid
\__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n
     \ tag mc insert mcid single kids:n
                                 kids we need a variant for the case that it is the only kid, to get the array right
                                 122 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n
                                 123
                                        \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,0) }
                                 124
                                 126
                                 127 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n
                                 128
                                        \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,1) }
                                 129
                                 130
                                 (End definition for \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n and \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n.)
                                 This is the lua variant for the command to put an mcid absolute number in the current
    \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n
    \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x
                                 structure.
                                   \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n %1 mcidnum
                                 131
                                      {
                                           _tag_check_mc_used:n { #1 }
                                        \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
                                 134
                                                             % so use the kernel command
                                 135
                                          { g_tag_struct_kids_\g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
                                 136
                                             \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n {#1}%
                                 138
                                        \lua_now:e
                                141
                                          {
                                 142
                                             ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs
                                 143
                                                 \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl,\#1
                                 144
                                 145
```

}

146

```
147
                         \prop_gput:Nxx
                 148
                           \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
                           { #1 }
                 149
                           150
                 152
                 153 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { x }
                  (End definition for \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n.)
                 This is the lua version of the user command. We currently don't check if there is nesting
\tag_mc_begin:n
                  as it doesn't matter so much in lua.
                    \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_begin:n
                      {
                 155
                         156
                             \group_begin:
                 158
                             %\__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
                             \verb|\bool_gset_true:N \ \g_tag_in_mc_bool|
                             \verb|\bool_set_false:N\l\__tag_mc_artifact_bool|
                 161
                             \tl_clear:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
                             \verb|\int_gincr:N \c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int| \\
                 163
                             \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ label={}, #1 }
                 164
                             %check that a tag or artifact has been used
                 165
                             \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
                 166
                             %set the attributes:
                             \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o { \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
                             \verb|\bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool|
                               { % store the absolute num name in a label:
                                 \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
                                     \exp_args:NV
                                      \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
                 174
                 175
                                % if not stashed record the absolute number
                 176
                 177
                                 \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
                                      \__tag_mc_handle_stash:x { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
                               7
                 181
                 182
                             \group_end:
                         }
                 183
                      }
                 184
                  (End definition for \tag_mc_begin:n. This function is documented on page 45.)
                 TODO: check how the use command must be guarded.
   \tag_mc_end:
                    \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
                      {
                 186
                           _tag_check_if_active_mc:T
                 187
                 188
                             %\__tag_check_mc_if_open:
                 189
                             \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
                 190
                             \verb|\bool_set_false:N\l\__tag_mc_artifact_bool|
```

```
192 \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:

193 \t1_set:Nn \1_tag_mc_key_tag_t1 { }

194 \t1_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_t1 { }

195 }

196 }
```

(End definition for \tag\_mc\_end:. This function is documented on page 45.)

\\_\_tag\_get\_data\_mc\_tag:

The command to retrieve the current mc tag. TODO: Perhaps this should use the attribute instead.

```
197 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_t1 }
(End definition for \__tag_get_data_mc_tag:.)
```

### 1.2 Key definitions

alttext-o .code:n

234

```
tag TODO: check conversion, check if local/global setting is right.
```

```
198 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
     alttext
              199
                   {
                      tag .code:n = %
   alttext-o
             200
  actualtext
             201
                          \t!
                                        \1__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
              202
actualtext-o
                          \t1_gset:Nx
                                        \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
              203
       label
                          \lua_now:e
    artifact
                              ltx.\_tag.func.store\_mc\_data(\\_\_tag\_get\_mc\_abs\_cnt:,"tag","\#1")
              207
                        },
              208
                     raw .code:n =
              209
                        ₹
                          \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
                          \lua_now:e
                            {
                              ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"raw","#1")
              214
              215
                        },
              216
                                            = % Alt property
              217
                      alttext .code:n
              218
                          \str_set_convert:Nnon
              219
                            \l__tag_tmpa_str
                            { #1 }
                            { default }
                            { utf16/hex }
              223
                          \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
              224
                          \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
                          \lua_now:e
                            {
                              {\tt ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_data}
                                 (
                                    \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"alt","/Alt~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
              230
                            }
                        },
```

= % Alt property

```
235
            \str_set_convert:Noon
236
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
              { #1 }
238
              { default }
239
              { utf16/hex }
            \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
            \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
            \lua_now:e
              {
244
                 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
245
246
                      \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"alt","/Alt~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
247
248
249
         },
250
       actualtext .code:n
                                   = % Alt property
251
          {
            \str\_set\_convert:Nnon
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
              { #1 }
              { default }
              { utf16/hex }
257
            \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
            \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
259
            \lua_now:e
260
              {
261
                 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
                     \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"actualtext","/ActualText~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str
             }
         },
267
                                     = % Alt property
       actualtext-o .code:n
268
269
            \str_set_convert:Noon
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
              { #1 }
273
              { default }
              { utf16/hex }
            \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }</pre>
            \label{local_local_local_local_local_local} $$ \tilde{l}_put_right:No \l_tag_mc_key_properties_t1 { \l_tag_tmpa_str>~ } $$
            \lua_now:e
              {
278
                 {\tt ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_data}
279
                   (
280
                      \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,
281
                     "actualtext",
                     "/ActualText~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
283
284
                   )
              }
         },
287
       label .code:n =
          {
288
```

```
\label{local_to_set_nnl} $$ \t: Nn\l_tag_mc_key_label_tl { #1 } $$
289
            \lua_now:e
290
               {
291
                 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
292
293
                      \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"label","#1"
               }
          },
        __artifact-store .code:n =
          {
            \lua_now:e
300
               {
301
                 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
302
303
                      \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"artifact","#1"
304
305
               }
          },
        artifact .code:n
          {
            \verb|\exp_args:Nnx|
310
               \keys\_set:nn
311
                 { __tag / mc}
312
                 { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1, tag=Artifact }
313
            \exp_args:Nnx
314
               \keys_set:nn
315
                 { __tag / mc }
316
                  \{ \ \_artifact\_store=\label{local_type_tl} \\ \}
317
          },
318
                                   = { notype }
       \verb|artifact|.default:n|
319
     }
320
321
322 (/luamode)
```

(End definition for tag and others. These functions are documented on page 72.)

## Part VII

# The tagpdf-struct module Commands to create the structure Part of the tagpdf package

#### **Public Commands** 1

\tag\_struct\_begin:n \tag\_struct\_begin:n{\langle key-values \rangle}

\tag\_struct\_end:

\tag\_struct\_end:

These commands start and end a new structure. They don't start a group. They set all their values globally.

 $\text{tag\_struct\_use:n } \text{tag\_struct\_use:n}$ 

These commands insert a structure previously stashed away as kid into the currently active structure. A structure should be used only once, if the structure already has a parent a warning is issued.

The following two functions are used to add annotations. They must be used together and with care to get the same numbers. Perhaps some improvements are needed here.

 $\text{tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn } \text{tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn} \{ object reference \} \} \{ \{ struct parent number \} \} \}$ 

This inserts an annotation in the structure. (object reference) is there reference to the annotation. (struct parent number) should be the same number as had been inserted with \tag struct\_parent\_int: as StructParent value to the dictionary of the annotion. The command will increase the value of the counter used by \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:.

\tag\_struct\_parent\_int: \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:

This gives back the next free /StructParent number (assuming that it is together with \tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn which will increase the number.

#### 2 Public keys

#### Keys for the structure commands

tag This is required. The value of the key is normally one of the standard types listed in section ??. It is possible to setup new tags/types. The value can also be of the form type/NS, where NS is the shorthand of a declared name space. Currently the names spaces pdf, pdf2, mathml and user are defined. This allows to use a different name space than the one connected by default to the tag. But normally this should not be needed.

Normally a new structure inserts itself as a kid into the currently active structure. This key prohibits this. The structure is nevertheless from now on "the current active structure" and parent for following marked content and structures.

This key sets a label by which one can use the structure later in another structure. Internally the label name will start with tagpdfstruct-.

This keys allows to set the dictionary entry /Title in the structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. Commands are not expanded. title-o will expand the value once.

alttext This key inserts an /Alt value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled alttext-o as verbatim string and hex encoded. alttext-o will expand the value once.

actualtext This key inserts an /ActualText value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is actualtext-o will expand the value once.

This key allows to set the language for a structure element. The value should be a bcp-identifier, e.g. de-De.

This key allows to add references to other structure elements, it adds the /Ref array to the structure. The value should be a comma separated list of structure labels set with the label key. e.g. ref={label1,label2}.

 $\stackrel{\sf E}{-}$  This key sets the /E key, the expanded form of an abbreviation or an acronym (I couldn't think of a better name, so I sticked to E).

AF = \langle object name \rangle
AF-inline = \langle text content \rangle

AFinline-o These keys allows to reference an associated file in the structure element. The value *(object name)* should be the name of an object pointing to the /Filespec dictionary as expected by \pdf\_object\_ref:n from a current 13kernel.

The value AF-inline is some text, which is embedded in the PDF as a text file with mime type text/plain. AF-inline-o is like AF-inline but expands the value once.

Future versions will perhaps extend this to more mime types, but it is still a research task to find out what is really needed.

attribute This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute dictionary entries in the structure object. As an example

```
\tagstructbegin{tag=TH,attribute= TH-row}
```

Attribute names and their content must be declared first in \tagpdfsetup.

attribute-class This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute class names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute classes to the structure object.

Attribute class names and their content must be declared first in \tagpdfsetup.

#### 2.2Setup keys

```
newattribute newattribute = \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle Content \rangle\}
```

This key can be used in the setup command \tagpdfsetup and allow to declare a new attribute, which can be used as attribute or attribute class. The value are two brace groups, the first contains the name, the second the content.

```
\tagpdfsetup
{
 newattribute =
   {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},
 newattribute =
   {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},
1 (00=tag)
2 (*header)
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-struct-code} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to storing structure}
```

#### Variables 3

\c@g\_\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int

Every structure will have a unique, absolute number. I will use a latex counter for the structure count to have a chance to avoid double structures in align etc.

```
7 \newcounter { g_tag_struct_abs_int }
8 \int_gzero:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int.|)
```

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_objR\_seq

a sequence to store mapping between the structure number and the object number. We assume that structure numbers are assign consecutively and so the index of the seq can be used. A seq allows easy mapping over the structures.

```
g \searrow tag_seq_new: N \searrow tag_struct_objR_seq
```

```
(End\ definition\ for\ \g_tag_struct_objR_seq.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_cont\_mc\_prop

in generic mode it can happen after a page break that we have to inject into a structure sequence an additional mc after. We will store this additional info in a property. The key is the absolut mc num, the value the pdf directory.

```
(End definition for \g_tag_struct_cont_mc_prop.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_stack\_seq

A stack sequence for the structure stack. When a sequence is opened it's number is put on the stack.

```
11 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
12 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_seq {0}
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\g_tag_struct_stack_seq.|)$ 

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_tag\_stack\_seq

We will perhaps also need the tags. While it is possible to get them from the numbered stack, lets build a tag stack too.

```
13 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
14 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq {Root}
(End definition for \g_tag_struct_tag_stack_seq.)
```

\g\_\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_tl \l\_\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_tl The global variable will hold the current structure number. The local temporary variable will hold the parent when we fetch it from the stack.

```
15 \tl_new:N \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl
16 \tl_new:N \l_tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
```

I will need at least one structure: the StructTreeRoot normally it should have only one kid, e.g. the document element.

The data of the StructTreeRoot and the StructElem are in properties:  $\g_00_{\text{struct}_0_{\text{prop}}}$  for the root and  $\g_00_{\text{struct}_0_{\text{prop}}}$ ,  $N \ge 1$  for the other.

This creates quite a number of properties, so perhaps we will have to do this more efficiently in the future.

All properties have at least the keys

#### Type StructTreeRoot or StructElem

and the keys from the two following lists (the root has a special set of properties). the values of the prop should be already escaped properly when the entries are created (title,lange,alt,E,actualtext)

\c\_\_tag\_struct\_StructTreeRoot\_entries\_seq
\c\_\_tag\_struct\_StructElem\_entries\_seq

These seq contain the keys we support in the two object types. They are currently no longer used, but are provided as documentation and for potential future checks. They should be adapted if there are changes in the PDF format.

```
17 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq
    {%p. 857/858
                          % always /StructTreeRoot
      Type,
                          % kid, dictionary or array of dictionaries
      K.
20
      IDTree,
                          % currently unused
21
      ParentTree,
                          \% required,obj ref to the parent tree
22
      ParentTreeNextKey, % optional
23
      RoleMap,
24
```

```
ClassMap,
       Namespaces
26
27
28
  \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq
       Type,
                             %always /StructElem
31
       S,
                             %tag/type
       Р,
                             %parent
33
       ID,
                             %optional
       Ref,
                             %optional, pdf 2.0 Use?
       Pg,
                             %obj num of starting page, optional
       Κ,
                             %kids
       Α,
                             %attributes, probably unused
38
                             %class ""
       С,
39
       %R,
                             %attribute revision number, irrelevant for us as we
40
                             % don't update/change existing PDF and (probably)
                             \% deprecated in PDF 2.0
       Τ,
                             %title, value in () or <>
                             %language
       Lang,
                             % value in () or <>
       Alt,
                             % abreviation
       ActualText,
       AF,
                              %pdf 2.0, array of dict, associated files
       NS,
                              %pdf 2.0, dict, namespace
49
       PhoneticAlphabet,
                              %pdf 2.0
50
                              %pdf 2.0
51
    }
52
(\mathit{End \ definition \ for \ \ } \texttt{c\_tag\_struct\_StructTreeRoot\_entries\_seq} \ \ \mathit{and \ \ } \texttt{c\_tag\_struct\_StructElem\_-lembers})
entries_seq.)
```

#### 3.1 Variables used by the keys

#### 4 Commands

The properties must be in some places handled expandably. So I need an output handler for each prop, to get expandable output see https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/424208. There is probably room here for a more efficient implementation. TODO check if this can now be implemented with the pdfdict commands. The property contains currently non pdf keys, but e.g. object numbers are perhaps no longer needed as we have named object anyway.

\\_\_tag\_struct\_output\_prop\_aux:nn \\_\_tag\_new\_output\_prop\_handler:n

```
57 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn #1 #2 %#1 num, #2 key
       \prop_if_in:cnT
         { g_tag_struct_#1_prop }
         { #2 }
61
62
           \c_space_t1/\#2^{\sim} prop_item:cn{g_tag_struct_\#1_prop}{\#2}
63
64
    }
65
66
67
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n #1
68
69
       \cs_new:cn { __tag_struct_output_prop_#1:n }
            __tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn {#1}{##1}
71
72
    }
73
(End definition for \__tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn and \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n.)
```

#### 4.1 Initialization of the StructTreeRoot

The first structure element, the StructTreeRoot is special, so created manually. The underlying object is <code>@@/struct/O</code> which is currently created in the tree code (TODO move it here). The <code>ParentTree</code> and <code>RoleMap</code> entries are added at begin document in the tree code as they refer to object which are setup in other parts of the code. This avoid timing issues.

```
74 \tl_gset:Nn \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl {0}

g_tag_struct_0_prop

g_tag_struct_kids_0_seq
75 \_tag_prop_new:c { g_tag_struct_0_prop }
76 \_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {0}
77 \_tag_seq_new:c { g_tag_struct_kids_0_seq }

78

79 \_tag_prop_gput:cnn
80 { g_tag_struct_0_prop }
81 { Type }
82 { /StructTreeRoot }
83
84
85
```

Namespaces are pdf 2.0 but it doesn't harm to have an empty entry. We could add a test, but if the code moves into the kernel, timing could get tricky.

#### 4.2 Handlings kids

Commands to store the kids. Kids in a structure can be a reference to a mc-chunk, an object reference to another structure element, or a object reference to an annotation (through an OBJR object).

\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_mc\_gput\_right:nn
\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_mc\_gput\_right:nx

The command to store an mc-chunk, this is a dictionary of type MCR. It would be possible to write out the content directly as unnamed object and to store only the object reference, but probably this would be slower, and the PDF is more readable like this. The code doesn't try to avoid the use of the /Pg key by checking page numbers. That imho only slows down without much gain. In generic mode the page break code will perhaps to have to insert an additional mcid after an existing one. For this we use a property list At first an auxiliary to write the MCID dict. This should normally be expanded!

```
\cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n #1 %#1 MCID absnum
     {
91
92
         /Type \c_space_tl /MCR \c_space_tl
93
         /Pg
           \c_space_tl
         \pdf_pageobject_ref:n { \__tag_ref_value:enn{mcid-#1}{tagabspage}{1} }
          \label{local_model} $$ \MCID \c_space_tl \c_tag_ref_value:enn\{mcid-\#1\}\{tagmcid\}\{1\} $$
97
98
     }
aa
   \cs new protected:Npn \ tag struct kid mc gput right:nn #1 #2 %#1 structure num, #2 MCID abs
100
     {
101
       \__tag_seq_gput_right:cx
102
         { g_tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
103
            \_tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}
       \__tag_seq_gput_right:cn
         { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
109
            \prop_item: Nn \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#2}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn {nx}
(End definition for \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn.)
```

\\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_right:nn
\\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_right:xx

This commands adds a structure as kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.

115 \cs\_new\_protected:Npn\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_right:nn #1 #2 %#1 num of parent struct, #.

\\_tag\_struct\_kid\_OBJR\_gput\_right:nn
\\_tag\_struct\_kid\_OBJR\_gput\_right:xx

At last the command to add an OBJR object. This has to write an object first. The first argument is the number of the parent structure, the second the (expanded) object reference of the annotation.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn #1 #2 %#1 num of parent struct,
                                                                      %#2 obj reference
126
       \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn
128
         { dict }
129
           /Type/OBJR/Obj~#2
131
       \__tag_seq_gput_right:cx
         { g_tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
1.34
135
            \pdf_object_ref_last:
136
138
139
140
  \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn { xx }
141
(End definition for \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nn.)
```

\\_tag\_struct\_exchange\_kid\_command:N \\_tag\_struct\_exchange\_kid\_command:c In luamode it can happen that a single kid in a structure is split at a page break into two or more mcid. In this case the lua code has to convert put the dictionary of the kid into an array. See issue 13 at tagpdf repo. We exchange the dummy command for the kids to mark this case.

\\_\_tag\_struct\_fill\_kid\_key:n

This command adds the kid info to the K entry. In lua mode the content contains commands which are expanded later. The argument is the structure number.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n #1 %#1 is the struct num
154
                     \bool_if:NF\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
                                  \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
                                 \seq_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
158
                                    { \seq_put_right:Nx \l_tag_tmpa_seq { ##1 } }
159
                                 \verb|\| % \end{substruct_kids_\#1_seq} | % \end{substruct_kids_\#
160
                                 %\seq_show:N \l_tag_tmpa_seq
161
                                 \seq_remove_all:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {}
162
                                 %\seq_{show:N} \label{lower} 1_{tag_tmpa_seq}
163
                                  \seq_gset_eq:cN { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq } \l__tag_tmpa_seq
164
165
166
                     \int_case:nnF
168
                           {
                                 \seq_count:c
169
170
                                              g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
171
                          }
174
                                  { 0 }
175
                                     { } %no kids, do nothing
                                 { 1 } % 1 kid, insert
                                    {
179
                                          % in this case we need a special command in
                                          % luamode to get the array right. See issue #13
180
                                           \bool_if:NT\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
181
182
                                                 {
                                                              _tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c
183
                                                            {g_tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}
184
185
                                           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {K}
186
                                                        \seq_item:cn
                                                                    g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
                                                              {1}
192
193
                                    } %
194
195
                           { %many kids, use an array
196
                                  \__tag_prop_gput:cnx { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {K}
                                        {
                                                     \seq_use:cn
200
                                                           {
201
                                                                 g\_\_tag\_struct\_kids\_\#1\_seq
202
203
                                                           {
204
```

```
205 \c_space_tl
206 }
207 ]
208 }
209 }
210 }
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_struct\_fill\_kid\_key:n.)

 $\verb|\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN|$ 

This maps the dictionary content of a structure into a tl-var. Basically it does what \pdfdict\_use:n does. TODO!! this looks over-complicated. Check if it can be done with pdfdict now.

```
212 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN #1 #2 %#1: stucture num
213
    {
       \tl_clear:N #2
214
       \seq_map_inline:cn
215
         {
216
217
           c__tag_struct_
            \int_compare:nNnTF{#1}={0}{StructTreeRoot}{StructElem}
218
            _entries_seq
         }
           \tl_put_right:Nx
             #2
             {
                 \prop_if_in:cnT
                   { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
                   { ##1 }
228
                     \c_space_tl/##1~\prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop } { ##1 }
                   }
231
             }
         }
    }
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN|.)$ 

\\_\_tag\_struct\_write\_obj:n

This writes out the structure object. This is done in the finish code, in the tree module and guarded by the tree boolean.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_write_obj:n #1 % #1 is the struct num
235
       \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF { __tag/struct/#1 }
236
           \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { #1 }
238
           \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { #1 } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
239
           \exp_args:Nx
240
             \pdf_object_write:nx
241
               { __tag/struct/#1 }
                  \l__tag_tmpa_tl
245
         }
246
         {
247
```

\ tag struct insert annot:nn

This is the command to insert an annotation into the structure. It can probably be used for xform too.

Annotations used as structure content must

- 1. add a StructParent integer to their dictionary
- 2. push the object reference as OBJR object in the structure
- 3. Add a Structparent/obj-nr reference to the parent tree.

For a link this looks like this

```
\tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
                              \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
 (1)
                              \pdfannot_dict_put:nnx
                                    { link/URI }
                                    { StructParent }
                                    { \int_use:N\c@g_@@_parenttree_obj_int }
            <start link> link text <stop link>
 (2+3)
                              \@@_struct_insert_annot:nn {obj ref}{parent num}
                              \tag_mc_end:
                              \tag_struct_end:
        \colored: Npn 
                                                                                                                                                                                         %#2 structparent number
252
               {
253
                      \bool if:NT \g tag active struct bool
254
                            {
255
                                  %get the number of the parent structure:
256
                                  \seq_get:NNF
                                         \g_tag_struct_stack_seq
                                         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
                                        {
                                               \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
                                  %put the obj number of the annot in the kid entry, this also creates
                                  %the OBJR object
                                   \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:xx
                                                \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
                                        }
                                        {
                                               #1 %
                                        }
                                  \mbox{\ensuremath{\it\%}} add the parent obj number to the parent tree:
                                  \exp_args:Nnx
                                   \__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
274
275
276
                                               #2
```

```
}
                                             {
                               278
                                               \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
                               279
                                            }
                               280
                                          % increase the int:
                               281
                                           \stepcounter{ g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }
                               283
                                    7
                               (End definition for \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn.)
                               this command allows \tag_get:n to get the current structure tag with the keyword
\__tag_get_data_struct_tag:
                               struct tag. We will need to handle nesting
                               285 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_tag:
                                    {
                               286
                                      \exp_args:Ne
                               287
                                      \tl_tail:n
                               288
                                       {
                                         \prop_item:cn {g_tag_struct_\g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop}{S}
                                       }
                               291
                               292
                               (End definition for \__tag_get_data_struct_tag:.)
```

# 5 Keys

This are the keys for the user commands. we store the tag in a variable. But we should be careful, it is only reliable at the begin.

```
label
                                                                                                              stash
                                                                                                                                                            293 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
                                                                                                                             tag
                                                                                                                                                                                                {
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      = \l__tag_struct_key_label_tl,
                                                                                                                                                                                                              label .tl_set:N
                                                                                                              title
                                                                                                                                                                                                              stash .bool set:N
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       = \l_tag_struct_elem_stash_bool,
                                                                                               title-o
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        = % S property
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          .code:n
                                                                                                                                                                                                               tag
                                                                                               alttext
                                                                                                                                                                                                                              {
                                                                                alttext-o
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             \label{lem:non_set_split:Nne logical} $$ \operatorname{set_split:Nne \label{logical} logical} $$ \operatorname{set_split:Nne \label{logical} logical} $$ \operatorname{logical} $$ \operatorname{set_split:Nne \label{logical} logical} $$ \operatorname{logical} $$ \operatorname{logical
                                                                         actualtext
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            \tl_gset:Nx \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
actual text-o_{\sqcup\sqcup\sqcup\sqcup}lang
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            \label{local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_loc
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   { g_tag_struct_int_eval:n {c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
                                                                                                                                                              304
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   { S }
                                                                                                                                                              305
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{ \g_tag_struct_tag_tl} } %
                                                                                                                                                              306
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        \prop_get:NVNT \g__tag_role_NS_prop\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl\l__tag_tmpa_tl
                                                                                                                                                              307
                                                                                                                                                              308
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          { NS }
                                                                                                                                                              311
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          { \l__tag_tmpa_t1 } %
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   }
                                                                                                                                                              313
                                                                                                                                                                                                                            },
                                                                                                                                                              314
                                                                                                                                                                                                               title .code:n
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       = % T property
                                                                                                                                                              315
```

```
316
            \str_set_convert:Nnon
317
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
318
              { #1 }
319
              { default }
320
              { utf16/hex }
321
            \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
              { g\_tag\_struct\_int\_eval:n {\c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int}\_prop }
              { T }
              { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
         },
       title-o .code:n
                                 = % T property
327
         {
328
            \verb|\str_set_convert:Nnon|
329
              \label{local_tag_tmpa_str} $$ l_tag_tmpa_str
330
              { #1 }
331
              { default }
332
              { utf16/hex }
333
            \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
               \{ \ g\_tag\_struct\_int\_eval:n \ \{\c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int\}\_prop \ \} 
              { T }
              { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
337
         },
338
       alttext .code:n
                               = % Alt property
339
340
            \str_set_convert:Nnon
341
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
342
              { #1 }
343
              { default }
              { utf16/hex }
            \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
              { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
              { Alt }
348
              { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
349
         },
350
       alttext-o .code:n
                                 = % Alt property
351
352
353
            \str_set_convert:Noon
354
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
              { #1 }
              { default }
              { utf16/hex }
            \verb|\__tag_prop_gput:cnx|
              { g_tag_struct_int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
359
              { Alt }
360
              { < \l_tag_tmpa_str> }
361
         },
362
       actualtext .code:n = % ActualText property
363
            \str_set_convert:Nnon
              \l__tag_tmpa_str
              { #1 }
              { default }
368
              { utf16/hex }
369
```

```
370
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
             { g\_tag\_struct\_int\_eval:n {\c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int}\_prop }
371
             { ActualText }
372
             { < \l_tag_tmpa_str>}
373
         },
374
       actualtext-o .code:n = % ActualText property
375
         {
376
           \str_set_convert:Noon
             \l__tag_tmpa_str
             { #1 }
             { default }
             { utf16/hex }
381
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
382
             { g_tag_struct_int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
383
             { ActualText }
384
             { < \l_tag_tmpa_str>}
385
         },
386
       lang .code:n
                            = % Lang property
387
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
             { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
             { Lang }
391
             { (#1) }
         },
393
       ref .code:n
                           = % Lang property
394
           \tl_clear:N\l__tag_tmpa_tl
           \clist_map_inline:nn {#1}
             {
                \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
                  {~\ref_value:nn{tagpdfstruct-##1}{tagstructobj} }
402
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
             { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
403
             { Ref }
404
             { [\l_tag_tmpa_t1] }
405
         },
406
       E .code:n
                         = % E property
407
           \str_set_convert:Nnon
             \l__tag_tmpa_str
411
             { #1 }
             { default }
412
             { utf16/hex }
413
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
414
             { g_tag_struct_int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
415
             { E }
416
             { <\l_tag_tmpa_str> }
417
         },
418
```

(End definition for label and others. These functions are documented on page 73.)

AF keys for the AF keys (associated files). They use commands from l3pdffile! The stream AFinline variants use txt as extension to get the mimetype. TODO: check if this should be AFinline-o

configurable. For math we will perhaps need another extension.

```
420 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
421
       AF .code:n
                            = % AF property
422
423
            \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF {#1}
424
              {
425
                 \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
426
                  { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
                  { AF }
                  { \pdf_object_ref:n {#1} }
              }
430
              {
431
432
              }
433
         },
434
      ,AFinline .code:n =
435
436
           \group_begin:
           \pdf_object_if_exist:eF {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
               \verb|\pdffile_embed_stream:nxx| \\
440
                 {#1}
441
                 \{ tag-AFfile \setminus int\_use : N \setminus c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int.txt \}
442
                  \{ \_tag/fileobj \setminus int\_use : \mathbb{N} \setminus c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int \} 
443
444
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
445
             { g_tag_struct_\int_use:N\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int _prop }
446
447
             { \pdf_object_ref:e {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
           \group_end:
450
      ,AFinline-o.code:n =
451
        {
452
           \group_begin:
453
           \pdf_object_if_exist:eF {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
454
455
               \pdffile_embed_stream:oxx
456
457
                 \{ tag-AFfile \setminus int\_use : N \setminus c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int.txt \}
                 {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
461
             { g_tag_struct_\int_use:N\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int _prop }
462
463
             { \pdf_object_ref:e {__tag/fileobj\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
464
           \group_end:
465
466
   }
467
```

(End definition for AF, AFinline, and AFinline-o. These functions are documented on page 73.)

#### 6 User commands

```
\tag_struct_begin:n
   \tag_struct_end:
                      468 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 %#1 key-val
                      469
                      470
                             \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
                      471
                      472
                                  \group_begin:
                                  \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
                                  \__tag_prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
                                  \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }}
                      475
                                  \__tag_seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_kids_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_seq}
                      476
                                 \exp_args:Ne
                      477
                                    \pdf_object_new:nn
                      478
                                      { __tag/struct/\int_eval:n { \c@g_tag_struct_abs_int } }
                      479
                                      { dict }
                      480
                                  \__tag_prop_gput:cno
                      481
                                   { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g_tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
                                    { Type }
                                    { /StructElem }
                                  \keys_set:nn { __tag / struct} { #1 }
                                  \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n { \int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int} }
                      486
                      487
                                  \tl_if_empty:NF
                                    \l__tag_struct_key_label_tl
                      488
                      489
                                   {
                                      \verb|\__tag_ref_label:en_{tagpdfstruct-\l__tag_struct_key_label_tl}_{struct}|
                      490
                      491
                                 %get the potential parent from the stack:
                      492
                                  \seq_get:NNF
                      493
                                    \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
                                    \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
                                   {
                                      \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
                                   }
                                 \label{lem:nv} $$ \ensuremath{$\leq$} gpush:NV \ensuremath{$\leq$} tag\_struct\_stack\_seq $$
                                                                                   \c@g\_tag\_struct\_abs\_int
                                  \seq_gpush:NV \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
                                                                                   \g_tag_struct_tag_tl
                      500
                                  \tl_gset:NV
                                                \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
                      501
                                 %\seq_show:N
                                                 \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
                      502
                                 \bool_if:NF
                      503
                                    \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
                                    {%set the parent
                                      \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
                                        { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
                                        { P }
                      508
                                        {
                      509
                                          \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
                      510
                                        }
                      511
                                      %record this structure as kid:
                      512
                                      %\tl_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
                      513
                                      %\tl_show:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
                                      \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:xx
                                         { \l_tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
                                         { \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
                      517
                                      %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
                      518
```

```
\label{lem:condition} $$ \scalebox{$\sim \{g\_tag\_struct\_kids\_\ll\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_tl\_seq} $$
522
            \group_end:
523
        7
524
     }
525
526
527
  \cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
     { %take the current structure num from the stack:
529
       %the objects are written later, lua mode hasn't all needed info yet
530
       %\seq_show:N \g_tag_struct_stack_seq
531
       \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
532
533
           \seq_gpop:NN
                          \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
534
            \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
535
             {
536
                \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:o { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
             7
             { \__tag_check_no_open_struct: }
           \% get the previous one, shouldn't be empty as the root should be there
           \seq_get:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
541
542
             {
                               \label{local_struct_stack_current_tl} $$ \g_tag_struct_stack_current_tl $$ l_tag_tmpa_tl $$
                \tl_gset:NV
543
             }
544
             {
                7
          \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
549
550
                \t1_gset:NV \g_tag_struct_tag_tl \1_tag_tmpa_tl
551
         }
552
     }
553
(End definition for \tag_struct_begin:n and \tag_struct_end:. These functions are documented on
page 72.)
This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. TODO: decide how it
should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.
   \cs_new_protected: Nn \tag_struct_use:n %#1 is the label
555
       556
557
```

{ g\_tag\_struct\_\\_tag\_ref\_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}\_prop } %

%add the label structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)

%\seq\_show:c {g\_\_tag\_struct\_kids\_\l\_\_tag\_struct\_stack\_parent\_tmpa\_tl \_seq}

%\prop\_show:c { g\_\_tag\_struct\_\g\_\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_tl \_prop }

519

520

521

\tag\_struct\_use:n

558

550

560

561

562

563

}

{ \\_\_tag\_ref\_value:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{0} } % add the current structure to the labeled one as parents

\prop\_if\_exist:cTF

\\_\_tag\_check\_struct\_used:n {#1}

\\_\_tag\_struct\_kid\_struct\_gput\_right:xx

{ \g\_tag\_struct\_stack\_current\_tl }

{

```
\__tag_prop_gput:cnx
                      \{ \ g\_tag\_struct\_ \setminus \_tag\_ref\_value: enn \{ tagpdfstruct-\#1 \} \{ tagstruct \} \{ 0 \}\_prop \ \} 
                     { P }
                     {
570
                       \pdf_object_ref:e { __tag/struct/\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
571
572
               }
573
                {
                   \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
576
          }
577
      7
578
```

(End definition for \tag\_struct\_use:n. This function is documented on page 72.)

\tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn
\tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:xx
\tag\_struct\_parent\_int:

This are the user command to insert annotations. They must be used together to get the numbers right. They use a counter to the StructParent and \tag\_struct\_insert\_-annot:nn increases the counter given back by \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:.

It must be used together with \tag\_struct\_parent\_int: to insert an annotation. TODO: decide how it should be guarded if tagging is deactivated.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2 %#1 should be an object reference
                                                               \%#2 struct parent num
580
581
         _tag_check_if_active_struct:T
582
583
             _tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {#1}{#2}
584
585
     7
  \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {xx}
  \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_parent_int: {\int_use:c { c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }}
589
590
591 (/package)
592
```

(End definition for \tag\_struct\_insert\_annot:nn and \tag\_struct\_parent\_int:. These functions are documented on page 72.)

#### 7 Attributes and attribute classes

```
^{593} \langle ^*header \rangle ^{594} \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-attr-code} {2021-07-03} {0.91} ^{595} {part of tagpdf - code related to attributes and attribute classes} ^{596} \langle /header \rangle
```

#### 7.1 Variables

\g\_\_tag\_attr\_entries\_prop \g\_\_tag\_attr\_class\_used\_seq \g\_\_tag\_attr\_objref\_prop \l\_\_tag\_attr\_value\_tl \g\_@@\_attr\_entries\_prop will store attribute names and their dictionary content. \g\_@@\_attr\_class\_used\_seq will hold the attributes which have been used as class name. \l\_@@\_attr\_value\_tl is used to build the attribute array or key. Everytime an attribute is used for the first time, and object is created with its content, the name-object reference relation is stored in \g\_@@\_attr\_objref\_prop

```
597 (*package)
```

```
$1 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
$1 \seq_new:N \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
$1 \tag_attr_value_tl
$1 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_objref_prop %will contain obj num of used attributes
$1 \tag_attr_objref_prop and others.
```

## 7.2 Commands and keys

\\_\_tag\_attr\_new\_entry:nn newattribute This allows to define attributes. Defined attributes are stored in a global property. newattribute expects two brace group, the name and the content. The content typically needs an /0 key for the owner. An example look like this.

```
\tagpdfsetup
   newattribute =
     {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},
   newattribute =
     {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},
    }
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1 #2 %#1:name, #2: content
    {
603
       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
604
         {#1}{#2}
605
606
607
   \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
609
      newattribute .code:n =
610
611
           \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
612
613
    }
614
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_attr\_new\_entry:nn and newattribute. This function is documented on page 74.)

attribute-class

attribute-class has to store the used attribute names so that they can be added to the ClassMap later.

```
615 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
616
   {
     attribute-class .code:n =
617
618
       \verb|\clist_set:No \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }|
619
       620
       \seq_map_inline:Nn \l_tag_tmpa_seq
621
622
           \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
623
              \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
          627
628
```

```
\seq_set_map:NNn \l_tag_tmpb_seq \l_tag_tmpa_seq
            629
                          {
            630
                            /##1
            631
                          }
            632
                        \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_tmpa_tl
            633
            634
                            \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[}
            635
                            \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_seq { \c_space_tl }
            636
                            \label{lem:lem:nt_compare:nt_loss} $$ \left( \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{i} \right) = \left( \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{i} \right) $$
                          }
                        \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 0 }
            640
                            \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
            641
                               { g_tag_struct_int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
            642
                               { C }
            643
                               { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
            644
                           %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
            645
                  7
            648
             (End definition for attribute-class. This function is documented on page 74.)
attribute
            649 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
                    attribute .code:n = % A property (attribute, value currently a dictionary)
            651
                       {
            652
                         \clist_set:No
                                                    \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
            653
                         \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
            654
                         \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl
            655
            656
                              \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]%]
            657
                           }
            658
                         \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
                           {
                              \label{lem:lem:nf} $$ \operatorname{prop}_{if}:NnF \ \g_tag_attr_entries\_prop \ {\#\#1}$
                                {
                                  \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
                              \prop_if_in: NnF \q_tag_attr_objref_prop \ \{\#\#1\}
                                 \{\%\prop\_show: N \q_tag_attr\_entries\_prop \end{subseteq} 
            666
                                  \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nx
                                    { dict }
                                     {
                                       \prop_item:Nn\g_tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
                                  \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1} {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
            672
                                7
            673
                              \verb|\tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl|
            674
                                {
            675
                                  \c_space_tl
            676
                                  \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
            677
```

678

```
\verb|\tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl|
   %
679
680
           \verb|\tl_put_right:Nx \l__tag_attr_value_tl|
681
             { %[
682
               683
684
          \verb|\tl_show:N \ll_tag_attr_value_tl|
685
           \__tag_prop_gput:cnx
686
             { g_tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g_tag_struct_abs_int}_prop } { A }
688
             { \label{local_tag_attr_value_tl} }
690
691
_{692} \langle /package \rangle
```

(End definition for attribute. This function is documented on page 74.)

## Part VIII

# The tagpdf-luatex.def Driver for luatex Part of the tagpdf package

# 1 Loading the lua

The space code requires that the fall back font has been loaded and initialized, so we force that first. But perhaps this could be done in the kernel.

```
5 {
6 \fontencoding{TU}\fontfamily{lmr}\fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}\fontsize{10pt}{10pt}\selectfon
7 }
8 \lua_now:e { tagpdf=require('tagpdf.lua') }
```

The following defines wrappers around prop and seq commands to store the data also in lua tables. I probably want also lua tables I put them in the ltx.@@.tables namespaces The tables will be named like the variables but without backslash To access such a table with a dynamical name create a string and then use ltx.@@.tables[string] Old code, I'm not quite sure if this was a good idea. Now I have mix of table in ltx.@@.tables and ltx.@@.mc/struct. And a lot is probably not needed. TODO: this should be cleaned up, but at least roles are currently using the table!

```
\__tag_prop_new:N
        \__tag_seq_new:N
                             9 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_new:N #1
    \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
\__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn
                                    \prop_new:N #1
                                    \label{lua_now:e} \{ ltx.\_tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} \}
      \__tag_seq_item:cn
     \__tag_prop_item:cn
       \__tag_seq_show:N
      \__tag_prop_show:N
                            16 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_new:N #1
                             17
                                    \seq_new:N #1
                             18
                                    \label{lua_now:e} \{ ltx.\_tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 = {} \}
                             19
                               \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn #1 #2 #3
                                    \prop_gput:Nnn #1 { #2 } { #3 }
                                    \label{lua_now:e} $$ \left\{ \ ltx.\_tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1 \ ["#2"] = "#3" \ \right\} $$
                            28
```

```
30 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn #1 #2
   {
31
      \seq_gput_right:Nn #1 { #2 }
32
      \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1, "#2") }
33
34
35
36 %Hm not quite sure about the naming
38 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_seq_item:cn #1 #2
      \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1[#2]) }
41
42
43 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_prop_item:cn #1 #2
44
      \lua_now:e { tex.print(ltx.__tag.tables.#1["#2"]) }
45
46
48 %for debugging commands that show both the seq/prop and the lua tables
  \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_show:N #1
50
      \sl y = 1
51
      \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~sequence~array~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
52
      \label{lua_now:e} $$ \{ ltx.\_tag.trace.show\_seq (ltx.\_tag.tables.\cs\_to\_str:N#1) $$ $$
53
54
55
56 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_show:N #1
57
      \prop_show:N #1
      \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~property~table~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
      \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (ltx.__tag.tables.\cs_to_str:N#1) }
(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_prop_new:N \ and\ others.)
62 (/luatex)
The module declaration
63 (*lua)
64 -- tagpdf.lua
65 -- Ulrike Fischer
67 local ProvidesLuaModule = {
                 = "tagpdf",
      name
                    = "0.91",
                                     --TAGVERSION
      version
69
                    = "2021-07-03", --TAGDATE
      date
70
      description = "tagpdf lua code",
      license
                     = "The LATEX Project Public License 1.3c"
73 }
75 if luatexbase and luatexbase.provides_module then
    luatexbase.provides_module (ProvidesLuaModule)
77 end
79 --[[
```

```
80 The code has quite probably a number of problems
81 - more variables should be local instead of global
82 - the naming is not always consistent due to the development of the code
83 - the traversing of the shipout box must be tested with more complicated setups
84 - it should probably handle more node types
86 --]]
Some comments about the lua structure.
89 the main table is named ltx.__tag. It contains the functions and also the data
90 collected during the compilation.
92 ltx.__tag.mc
                   will contain mc connected data.
93 ltx.__tag.struct will contain structure related data.
94 ltx.__tag.page will contain page data
95 ltx.__tag.tables contains also data from mc and struct (from older code). This needs cleaning
               There are certainly dublettes, but I don't dare yet ...
97 ltx.__tag.func
                  will contain (public) functions.
98 ltx.__tag.trace will contain tracing/loging functions.
99 local funktions starts with
100 functions meant for users will be in ltx.tag
102 functions
                                          takes a tag (string) and returns the id number
103 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from (tag):
   ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag): takes a tag (string) and prints (to tex) the id number
                                         takes a num and returns the tag
   ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from (num):
   ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num): takes a num and prints (to tex) the tag
  ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data): stores key=data in ltx.__tag.mc[num]
   ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num): stores label=num in ltx.__tag.mc.labels
   ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page): stores the mc-kids of mcnum on page page
110 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mcnum,mcpagecnt,page): stores in the page table the number of
1111 ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum): stores relations structnum<->mcnum (abs.
112 ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum): inserts the /K entries for mcnum by wandering through
113 ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements(box,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev) : the main
114 ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (): a wrapper around the core function which inserts the last EM
115 ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page): outputs the entries of the parenttree for this p
116 ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree(): outputs the content of the parenttree
   ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref(name): outputs the object reference for the object name
  ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon(), ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff(): (de)activates the marking of por
   ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel): shows ltx.__tag.mc[num] is the current log level.
119
   ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (max,loglevel): shows a maximum about mc's if the current le
   ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq: shows a sequence (array)
   ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num): shows data of structure num
   ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop: shows a prop
   ltx.__tag.trace.log
125 ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces : boolean
126 --]]
```

This set-ups the main attribute registers. The mc\_type attribute stores the type (P, Span etc) encoded as a num, The mc\_cnt attribute stores the absolute number and allows so to see if a node belongs to the same mc-chunk.

The interwordspace attr is set by the function <code>@C\_mark\_spaces</code>, and marks the place where spaces should be inserted. The interwordfont attr is set by the function QQ\_mark\_spaces too and stores the font, so that we can decide which font to use for the real space char.

```
128 local mctypeattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_type_attr")
129 local mccntattributeid = luatexbase.new attribute ("g tag mc cnt attr")
130 local iwspaceattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspace_attr")
131 local iwfontattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordfont_attr")
with this token we can query the state of the boolean and so detect if unmarked nodes
should be marked as attributes
132 local tagunmarkedbool= token.create("g__tag_tagunmarked_bool")
133 local truebool
                        = token.create("c_true_bool")
Now a number of local versions from global tables. Not all is perhaps needed, most node
```

variants were copied from lua-debug.

```
134 local catlatex
                       = luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@latex")
135 local tableinsert
                       = table.insert
136 local nodeid
                         = node.id
137 local nodecopy
                         = node.copy
138 local nodegetattribute = node.get_attribute
139 local nodesetattribute = node.set_attribute
140 local nodehasattribute = node.has_attribute
141 local nodenew = node.new
142 local nodetail
                       = node.tail
                       = node.slide
143 local nodeslide
144 local noderemove
                         = node.remove
145 local nodetraverseid = node.traverse_id
146 local nodetraverse = node.traverse
147 local nodeinsertafter = node.insert_after
148 local nodeinsertbefore = node.insert_before
149 local pdfpageref
                         = pdf.pageref
151 local HLIST
                       = node.id("hlist")
                       = node.id("vlist")
152 local VLIST
153 local RULE
                       = node.id("rule")
                       = node.id("disc")
154 local DISC
                      = node.id("glue")
155 local GLUE
156 local GLYPH
                      = node.id("glyph")
157 local KERN
                      = node.id("kern")
158 local PENALTY
                      = node.id("penalty")
                       = node.id("local_par")
159 local LOCAL_PAR
160 local MATH
                       = node.id("math")
```

Now we setup the main table structure. ltx is used by other latex code too!

```
or { }
                                        or { }
162 ltx.__tag
                     = ltx.__tag
                     = ltx.__tag.mc
163 ltx.__tag.mc
                                        or { } -- mc data
164 ltx.__tag.struct = ltx.__tag.struct or { } -- struct data
165 ltx.__tag.tables = ltx.__tag.tables or { } -- tables created with new prop and new seq.
                                          -- wasn't a so great idea ...
166
                                          -- g_tag_role_tags_seq used by tag<-> is in this tab.
                     = ltx.__tag.page or { } -- page data, currently only i->{0->mcnum,1->mcn
168 ltx.__tag.page
                     = ltx.__tag.trace or { } -- show commands
169 ltx.__tag.trace
                     = ltx.__tag.func or { } -- functions
170 ltx.__tag.func
```

# 2 Logging functions

\_\_tag\_log
ltx.\_\_tag.trace.log

This rather simple log function takes as argument a message (string) and a number and will output the message to the log/terminal if the current loglevel is greater or equal than num.

```
172 local __tag_log =
173 function (message,loglevel)
174    if (loglevel or 3) <= tex.count["l__tag_loglevel_int"] then
175        texio.write_nl("tagpdf: ".. message)
176    end
177    end
178
179 ltx.__tag.trace.log = __tag_log
(End definition for __tag_log and ltx.__tag.trace.log.)</pre>
```

ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_seq

This shows the content of a seq as stored in the tables table. It is used by the \@@\_seq\_show:N function. It is not used in user commands, only for debugging, and so requires log level >0.

```
180 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (seq)
181   if (type(seq) == "table") then
182   for i,v in ipairs(seq) do
183    __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
184   end
185   else
186    __tag_log ("sequence " .. tostring(seq) .. " not found",1)
187   end
188   end
(End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq.)
```

\_\_tag\_pairs\_prop ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_prop

This shows the content of a prop as stored in the tables table. It is used by the \@@\_prop\_show:N function.

```
189 local __tag_pairs_prop =
   function (prop)
         local a = {}
191
         for n in pairs(prop) do tableinsert(a, n) end
192
         table.sort(a)
193
         local i = 0
                                     -- iterator variable
         local iter = function ()
                                     -- iterator function
           i = i + 1
           if a[i] == nil then return nil
197
           else return a[i], prop[a[i]]
198
           end
         end
         return iter
202
     end
203
205 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (prop)
if (type(prop) == "table") then
```

```
__tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
                                209
                                     end
                                   else
                                210
                                      __tag_log ("prop " .. tostring(prop) .. " not found or not a table",1)
                               211
                                212
                                213
                                   end
                                (End definition for __tag_pairs_prop and ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop.)
                                This shows some data for a mc given by num. If something is shown depends on the log
ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data
                                level. The function is used by the following function and then in \ShowTagging
                                214 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel)
                                   if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.mc and ltx.__tag.mc[num] then
                                    for k,v in pairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]) do
                                216
                                     __tag_log ("mc"..num..": "..tostring(k).."=>"..tostring(v),loglevel)
                                217
                                218
                                    if ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] then
                                     __tag_log ("mc" .. num .. " has " .. #ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] .. " kids",loglevel)
                                     for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"]) do
                                      __tag_log ("mc ".. num .. " kid "..k.." =>" .. v.kid.." on page " ..v.page,loglevel)
                                      end
                                    end
                               224
                               225 else
                                   __tag_log ("mc"..num.." not found",loglevel)
                               226
                               227 end
                                228 end
                                (End\ definition\ for\ {\tt ltx.\_\_tag.trace.show\_mc\_data.})
                               This shows data for the mc's between min and max (numbers). It is used by the
       ltx. tag.trace.show all mc data
                                \ShowTagging function.
                                229 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (min,max,loglevel)
                                230 for i = min, max do
                                231
                                    ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (i,loglevel)
                                232
                                233 texio.write_nl("")
                                234 end
                                (End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data.)
                               This function shows some struct data. Unused but kept for debugging.
       ltx. tag.trace.show struct data
                                235 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num)
                                236 if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.struct and ltx.__tag.struct[num] then
                                    for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.struct[num]) do
                                     __tag_log ("struct "..num..": "..tostring(k).."=>"..tostring(v),1)
                                238
                                    end
                               239
                                240 else
                                   __tag_log
                                                 ("struct "..num.." not found ",1)
                                241
                                242 end
                                243 end
                                (End definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data.)
```

for i,v in \_\_tag\_pairs\_prop (prop) do

208

# 3 Helper functions

#### 3.1 Retrieve data functions

\_\_tag\_get\_mc\_cnt\_type\_tag

This takes a node as argument and returns the mc-cnt, the mc-type and and the tag (calculated from the mc-cnt.

```
244 local __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag = function (n)
245 local mccnt = nodegetattribute(n,mccntattributeid) or -1
246 local mctype = nodegetattribute(n,mctypeattributeid) or -1
247 local tag = ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from(mctype)
248 return mccnt,mctype,tag
249 end

(End definition for __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag.)
```

\_\_tag\_get\_mathsubtype

This function allows to detect if we are at the begin or the end of math. It takes as argument a mathnode.

```
250 local function __tag_get_mathsubtype (mathnode)
251 if mathnode.subtype == 0 then
252  subtype = "beginmath"
253  else
254  subtype = "endmath"
255  end
256  return subtype
257 end
(End definition for __tag_get_mathsubtype.)
```

\_\_tag\_get\_num\_from ltx.\_\_tag.func.get\_num\_from ltx.\_\_tag.func.output\_num\_from These functions take as argument a string tag, and return the number under which is it recorded (and so the attribute value). The first function outputs the number for lua, while the output function outputs to tex.

```
258 local __tag_get_num_from =
 259 function (tag)
                                      if ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_prop"][tag] then
                                                    a= ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_prop"][tag]
 261
                                      else
                                                  a = -1
 263
                                      end
                                    return a
267
 268 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from = __tag_get_num_from
 270 function ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag)
                                   local num = __tag_get_num_from (tag)
 271
                                    tex.sprint(catlatex,num)
                                    if num == -1 then
                                           __tag_log ("Unknown tag "..tag.." used")
    (\mathit{End\ definition\ for\ \_tag\_get\_num\_from\ },\ \mathit{ltx}.\ \_tag.\ \mathit{func.get\_num\_from\ },\ \mathit{and\ ltx}.\ \_tag.\ \mathit{func.output\_from\ },\ \mathit{ltx}.\ \_\mathit{ltg}.\ \mathit{ltg}.\ \mathit
    num_from.)
```

```
__tag_get_tag_from These functions are the opposites to the previous function: they take as argument a
 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from number (the attribute value) and return the string tag. The first function outputs the
        1tx. tag.func.output tag from number for lua, while the output function outputs to tex.
                                277 local __tag_get_tag_from =
                                278 function (num)
                                    if ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_seq"][num] then
                                     a = ltx.__tag.tables["g__tag_role_tags_seq"][num]
                                     else
                                281
                                     a= "UNKNOWN"
                                282
                                283
                                    end
                                284 return a
                               285 end
                               287 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from = __tag_get_tag_from
                                289 function ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num)
                                    tex.sprint(catlatex,__tag_get_tag_from (num))
                                291 end
                                (End\ definition\ for\ \_\texttt{tag\_get\_tag\_from}\ ,\ \texttt{ltx}.\ \_\texttt{tag.func.get\_tag\_from}\ ,\ and\ \texttt{ltx}.\ \_\texttt{tag.func.output\_func.get\_tag\_from}\ )
                                tag_from.)
                                This function stores for key=data for mc-chunk num. It is used in the tagpdf-mc code,
ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
                                to store for example the tag string, and the raw options.
                                292 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data)
                                294 ltx.__tag.mc[num][key] = data
                                295 __tag_log ("INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA: "..num.." => "..tostring(key).." => "..tostring(data),3.
                                (End definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data.)
         ltx. tag.func.store mc label
                                This function stores the label=num relationship in the labels subtable. TODO: this is
                                probably unused and can go.
                                297 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num)
                                298 ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] = ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] or { }
                                299 ltx.__tag.mc.labels[label] = num
                                300 end
                                (End definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label.)
 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid
                               This function is used in the traversing code. It stores a sub-chunk of a mc mcnum into
                                the kids table.
                                301 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page)
                                1tx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID: "..mcnum.." => " .. kid.." on page " .. page,3)
                                103 ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] or { }
```

local kidtable = {kid=kid,page=page}

(End definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_mc\_kid.)

305 tableinsert(ltx.\_\_tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"], kidtable )

```
case that a mc can have no kids.
                        307 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids (mcnum)
                        308 local num = 0
                           if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] and ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
                             num = #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"]
                        310
                        311
                        11x.__tag.trace.log ("INFO MC-KID-NUMBERS: " .. mcnum .. "has " .. num .. "KIDS",4)
                        313 return num
                        314 end
                        (End definition for ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids.)
                               Functions to insert the pdf literals
                       This insert the emc node.
tag insert emc node
                        315 local function __tag_insert_emc_node (head,current)
                        316 local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit", "pdf_literal")
                                  emcnode.data = "EMC"
                                  emcnode.mode=1
                                  head = node.insert_before(head,current,emcnode)
                        320 return head
                        321 end
                        (End definition for __tag_insert_emc_node.)
                       This inserts a simple bmc node
__tag_insert_bmc_node
                        322 local function __tag_insert_bmc_node (head,current,tag)
                        323 local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
                                  bmcnode.data = "/"..tag.." BMC"
                        324
                                  bmcnode.mode=1
                        325
                                  head = node.insert before(head, current, bmcnode)
                        326
                        327 return head
                        328 end
                        (End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_insert_bmc_node|.)
                        This inserts a bcd node with a fix dict. TODO: check if this is still used, now that we
__tag_insert_bdc_node
                        create properties.
                        329 local function __tag_insert_bdc_node (head,current,tag,dict)
                        330 local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit", "pdf literal")
                                  bdcnode.data = "/"..tag.."<<"..dict..">> BDC"
                        331
                                  bdcnode.mode=1
                                  head = node.insert before(head, current, bdcnode)
                        334 return head
                        335 end
                        (End definition for __tag_insert_bdc_node.)
                        This allows to reference a pdf object reserved with the l3pdf command by name. The
 __tag_pdf_object_ref
 ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref
                        return value is n 0 R, if the object doesn't exist, n is 0. TODO: is uses internal l3pdf
                        commands, this should be properly supported by l3pdf
```

ltx. tag.func.mc num of kids This function returns the number of kids a mc mcnum has. We need to account for the

local tokenname = 'c\_pdf\_backend\_object\_'..name..'\_int'

336 local function \_\_tag\_pdf\_object\_ref (name)

```
local object = token.create(tokenname).index...' O R'
return object

ned

ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref=__tag_pdf_object_ref

(End definition for __tag_pdf_object_ref and ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref.)
```

# 4 Function for the real space chars

\_\_tag\_show\_spacemark A debugging function, it is used to inserts red color markers in the places where space chars can go, it can have side effects so not always reliable, but ok.

```
342 local function __tag_show_spacemark (head, current, color, height)
                           343 local markcolor = color or "1 0 0"
                              local markheight = height or 10
                               local pdfstring = node.new("whatsit", "pdf_literal")
                                     pdfstring.data =
                           346
                                     string.format("q"..markcolor.." RG "..markcolor.." rg 0.4 w 0 %g m 0 %g 1 S Q",-
                           347
                              3, markheight)
                                     head = node.insert_after(head,current,pdfstring)
                           348
                           349 return head
                           350 end
                           (End definition for __tag_show_spacemark.)
                           This is used to define a lua version of \pdffakespace
         __tag_fakespace
ltx.__tag.func.fakespace
                           351 local function __tag_fakespace()
                                 tex.setattribute(iwspaceattributeid,1)
                                 tex.setattribute(iwfontattributeid,font.current())
                           354 end
                           355 ltx.__tag.func.fakespace = __tag_fakespace
                           (End definition for __tag_fakespace and ltx.__tag.func.fakespace.)
```

\_\_tag\_mark\_spaces

a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted. It only sets attributes, these are then be used in a later traversing which inserts the actual spaces. When space handling is activated this function is inserted in some callbacks.

```
356 --[[ a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted
       it only sets an attribute.
358 --]]
359
360 local function __tag_mark_spaces (head)
    local inside_math = false
    for n in nodetraverse(head) do
362
      local id = n.id
363
      if id == GLYPH then
        local glyph = n
365
        if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
           and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0)
          nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
370
          nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
         -- for debugging
371
         if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces then
372
```

```
373
           __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
          end
374
         elseif glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == KERN) and not inside_math then
375
          local kern = glyph.next
376
          if kern.next and (kern.next.id== GLUE) and (kern.next.width >0)
377
378
          nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
379
           nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
          end
         end
382
383
        -- look also back
        if glyph.prev and (glyph.prev.id == GLUE)
384
           and not inside_math
385
           and (glyph.prev.width >0)
386
           and not nodehasattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid)
387
         then
388
           nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid,1)
389
          nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
         -- for debugging
          if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces then
           __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
          end
         end
       elseif id == PENALTY then
         local glyph = n
397
         -- ltx.__tag.trace.log ("PENALTY ".. n.subtype.."VALUE"..n.penalty,3)
398
         if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
           and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0) and n.subtype==0
400
401
          nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
         -- nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
403
         -- for debugging
405
         if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces then
           __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
406
          end
407
         end
408
      elseif id == MATH then
409
410
         inside_math = (n.subtype == 0)
411
412
    end
    return head
414 end
(End definition for __tag_mark_spaces.)
Theses functions add/remove the function which marks the spaces to the callbacks
pre_linebreak_filter and hpack_filter
415 local function __tag_activate_mark_space ()
  if not luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter", "markspaces") then
    luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_linebreak_filter",__tag_mark_spaces, "markspaces")
    luatexbase.add_to_callback("hpack_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
419
420 end
```

\_\_tag\_activate\_mark\_space
ltx.\_\_tag.func.markspaceon

421

ltx.\_\_tag.func.markspaceoff

```
422 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon=__tag_activate_mark_space
                            424 local function __tag_deactivate_mark_space ()
                            425 if luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter", "markspaces") then
                               luatexbase.remove_from_callback("pre_linebreak_filter", "markspaces")
                               luatexbase.remove_from_callback("hpack_filter", "markspaces")
                            428
                            429 end
                            431 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff=__tag_deactivate_mark_space
                            (End definition for __tag_activate_mark_space, ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon, and ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff.)
                            We need two local variable to setup a default space char.
       default_space_char
           default_fontid
                           432 local default_space_char = node.new(GLYPH)
                                                       = font.id("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
                            433 local default_fontid
                            434 default_space_char.char = 32
                            435 default_space_char.font = default_fontid
                            (End definition for default_space_char and default_fontid. These functions are documented on page
                            These is the main function to insert real space chars. It inserts a glyph before every glue
__tag_space_chars_shipout
  ltx. tag.func.space chars shipout
                            which has been marked previously. The attributes are copied from the glue, so if the
                            tagging is done later, it will be tagged like it.
                            436 local function __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
                               local head = box.head
                                 if head then
                            438
                                   for n in node.traverse(head) do
                                     local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
                                     if n.id == HLIST then -- enter the hlist
                            442
                                        __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
                                     elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
                            443
                                        __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
                            444
                                     elseif n.id == GLUE then
                            445
                                       if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces and spaceattr==1 then
                            446
                                         __tag_show_spacemark (head,n,"0 1 0")
                            447
                                       end
                            448
                                       if spaceattr==1 then
                            449
                                         local space_char = node.copy(default_space_char)
                                         local curfont = nodegetattribute(n,iwfontattributeid)
                                         ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT: ".. tostring(curfont),3)
                            453
```

head, space = node.insert before(head, n, space char) --

= n.width - space.width

if curfont and luaotfload.aux.slot\_of\_name(curfont, "space") then

space\_char.font=curfont

space.attr = n.attr

end

end

end end end n.width

454

455

456

457

458

459

460

463 e.

```
465
466 function ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (box)
467 __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
468 end

(End definition for __tag_space_chars_shipout and ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout.)
```

## 5 Function for the tagging

 ${\tt ltx.\_tag.func.mc\_insert\_kids}$ 

This is the main function to insert the K entry into a StructElem object. It is used in tagpdf-mc-luacode module. The single attribute allows to handle the case that a single mc on the tex side can have more than one kid after the processing here, and so we get the correct array/non array setup.

```
469 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum,single)
     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] then
     ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST: " .. mcnum,4)
471
     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
       if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
473
474
        tex.sprint("[")
475
      for i,kidstable in ipairs( ltx.\_tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] ) do
476
       local kidnum = kidstable["kid"]
477
        local kidpage = kidstable["page"]
478
        local kidpageobjnum = pdfpageref(kidpage)
479
        ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID: " .. mcnum ..
480
                          " insert KID " ..i..
481
                          " with num " .. kidnum ..
                          " on page " .. kidpage.."/"..kidpageobjnum,3)
        tex.sprint(catlatex,"</Type /MCR /Pg "..kidpageobjnum .. " O R /MCID "..kidnum.. ">> " .
       if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
       tex.sprint("]")
487
      end
     else
       -- this is typically not a problem, e.g. empty hbox in footer/header can
490
       -- trigger this warning.
491
      ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS: "..mcnum.." has no kids",2)
      if single==1 then
         tex.sprint("null")
       end
495
     end
496
     else
497
     ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING: "..mcnum.." doesn't exist",0)
498
499
500 end
(End definition for ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids.)
```

ltx. tag.func.store struct mcabs

This function is used in the tagpdf-mc-luacode. It store the absolute count of the mc into the current structure. This must be done ordered.

```
function ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum)
ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] = ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] or { }
ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"] = ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"] or { }
```

```
ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT: "...
                                               mcnum.." inserted in struct "..structnum,3)
                         507
                            -- but every mc can only be in one structure
                           ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] or { }
                         510 ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] = structnum
                         (End\ definition\ for\ {\tt ltx.\_\_tag.func.store\_struct\_mcabs.})
                         This is used in the traversing code and stores the relation between abs count and page
 ltx. tag.func.store mc in page
                         513 -- pay attention: lua counts arrays from 1, tex pages from one
                         514 -- mcid and arrays in pdf count from 0.
                         function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page (mcnum,mcpagecnt,page)
                         1516 ltx.__tag.page[page] = ltx.__tag.page[page] or {}
                            ltx.__tag.page[page][mcpagecnt] = mcnum
                         1tx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE: page " .. page ..
                                                ": inserting MCID " .. mcpagecnt .. " => " .. mcnum,3)
                         520 end
                         (End definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page.)
                         This is the main traversing function. See the lua comment for more details.
ltx. tag.func.mark page elements
                         521 --[[
                                Now follows the core function
                         522
                                It wades through the shipout box and checks the attributes
                         523
                                ARGUMENTS
                         524
                                box: is a box,
                                mcpagecnt: num, the current page cnt of mc (should start at -1 in shipout box), needed for
                               mccntprev: num, the attribute cnt of the previous node/whatever - if different we have a
                                mcopen: num, records if some bdc/emc is open
                                These arguments are only needed for log messages, if not present are replaces by fix strip
                                name: string to describe the box
                         530
                                mctypeprev: num, the type attribute of the previous node/whatever
                         531
                         532
                                there are lots of logging messages currently. Should be cleaned up in due course.
                                One should also find ways to make the function shorter.
                         534
                         535
                         536
                         function ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev)
                             local name = name or ("SOMEBOX")
                              local mctypeprev = mctypeprev or -1
                              local abspage = status.total_pages + 1 -- the real counter is increased
                         540
                                                                        -- inside the box so one off
                         541
                                                                        -- if the callback is not used. (???)
                         542
                              ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ABSPAGE: " .. abspage,3)
                         543
                              ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ARGS: pagecnt".. mcpagecnt..
                        544
                                                 " prev "..mccntprev ..
                        545
                                                 " type prev "..mctypeprev,4)
                         546
                              ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX: ".. tostring(name)..
                                                 " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),3)
```

-- a structure can contain more than on mc chunk, the content should be ordered

tableinsert(ltx.\_\_tag.struct[structnum]["mc"],mcnum)

```
local head = box.head -- ShipoutBox is a vlist?
    if head then
550
      {\tt mccnthead, mctypehead, taghead = \__tag\_get\_mc\_cnt\_type\_tag \ (head)}
551
      ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-HEAD: " ..
552
                         node.type(node.getid(head))..
553
                          " MC"..tostring(mccnthead)..
554
                          " => TAG " .. tostring(mctypehead)..
555
                          " => ".. tostring(taghead),3)
556
     else
557
      ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NO-HEAD: head is "...
558
559
                           tostring(head),3)
560
     end
    for n in node.traverse(head) do
561
562
      local mccnt, mctype, tag = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (n)
      local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
563
      ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NODE: "...
564
                          node.type(node.getid(n))..
565
                          " MC".. tostring(mccnt)..
                          " => TAG ".. tostring(mctype)..
                          " => " .. tostring(tag),3)
       if n.id == HLIST
      then -- enter the hlist
570
571
       mcopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev=
        ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL HLIST",mctypej
572
       elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
573
       mcopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev=
574
         ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL VLIST",mctype
575
       elseif n.id == GLUE then
                                       -- at glue real space chars are inserted, but this has
576
                                       -- been done if the previous shipout wandering, so here it
577
       elseif n.id == LOCAL_PAR then -- local_par is ignored
       elseif n.id == PENALTY then
579
                                       -- penalty is ignored
       elseif n.id == KERN then
580
                                       -- kern is ignored
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE: "...
581
         node.type(node.getid(n)).." "..n.subtype,4)
582
      else
583
        -- math is currently only logged.
584
        -- we could mark the whole as math
585
        -- for inner processing the mlist_to_hlist callback is probably needed.
586
587
        if n.id == MATH then
         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE: "..
           node.type(node.getid(n)).." "..__tag_get_mathsubtype(n),4)
        end
        -- endmath
591
        ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE: current "...
592
                  mccnt.." prev "..mccntprev,4)
593
        if mccnt~=mccntprev then -- a new mc chunk
594
        ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE: "..
595
                            node.type(node.getid(n))..
596
                            " MC"..tostring(mccnt)..
597
                            " <=> PREVIOUS "..tostring(mccntprev),4)
         if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
          box.list=_tag_insert_emc_node (box.list,n)
601
         mcopen = mcopen - 1
          ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC: " ..
602
```

```
mcpagecnt .. " MCOPEN = " .. mcopen,3)
603
          if mcopen ~=0 then
604
           ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN TAG-OPEN-MC: " .. mcopen,1)
605
          end
606
607
         if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt] then
608
          if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"] then
609
           ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT: "...
610
                              tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"]),3)
           if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["artifact"] == "" then
            box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
613
614
           else
            box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact", "/Type /"..ltx.__tag.mc[mccl
615
616
           end
          else
617
           ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG: "...
618
                              tostring(tag),3)
619
           mcpagecnt = mcpagecnt +1
620
           ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC: "..mcpagecnt,3)
           local dict= "/MCID "..mcpagecnt
           if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"] then
            ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-RAW: "..
              tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"]),3)
            dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"]
           end
627
           if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"] then
628
            ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ALT: "...
629
               tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]),3)
630
            dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]
631
           end
           if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"] then
            ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT: "...
              tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]),3)
635
            dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]
636
           end
637
           box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,tag, dict)
638
           ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
639
           ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
640
641
           ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (mccnt,3)
          end
          mcopen = mcopen + 1
         else
          if tagunmarkedbool.mode == truebool.mode then
645
           ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged, using artifact",2
646
           box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
647
           mcopen = mcopen + 1
648
          else
649
           ltx.__tag.trace.log("WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged",1)
650
651
652
         mccntprev = mccnt
        end
       end -- end if
655
656
     end -- end for
```

```
if head then
657
       mccnthead, mctypehead,taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
658
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: " ..
659
                           node.type(node.getid(head))..
660
                          " MC"..tostring(mccnthead)..
661
                           " => TAG "..tostring(mctypehead)..
662
                           " => "..tostring(taghead),4)
663
     else
664
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: ".. tostring(head),4)
666
     ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX "..
                         tostring(name)..
668
                        " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),4)
669
   return mcopen, mcpagecnt, mccntprev, mctypeprev
670
671 end
672
(End definition for ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements.)
```

ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_shipout

This is the function used in the callback. Beside calling the traversing function it also checks if there is an open MC-chunk from a page break and insert the needed EMC literal.

```
function ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (box)
mcopen = ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,-1,-100,0,"Shipout",-1)
   if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
    local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit", "pdf_literal")
676
    local list = box.list
677
    emcnode.data = "EMC"
    emcnode.mode=1
679
    if list then
       list = node.insert_after (list,node.tail(list),emcnode)
681
682
       mcopen = mcopen - 1
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC: MCOPEN " .. mcopen,3)
683
684
     else
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-UPS: this shouldn't happen",0)
685
686
     end
     if mcopen ~=0 then
687
       ltx.__tag.trace.log ("WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN: " .. mcopen,1)
688
689
690
```

(End definition for ltx.\_\_tag.func.mark\_shipout.)

### 6 Parenttree

ltx.\_\_tag.func.fill\_parent\_tree\_line
ltx. tag.func.output parenttree

These functions create the parent tree. The second, main function is used in the tagpdf-tree code. TODO check if the tree code can move into the backend code.

```
if ltx.__tag.page[page] and ltx.__tag.page[page][0] then
697
       mcchunks=#ltx.__tag.page[page]
698
       ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUM: page "...
699
                     page.. " has "..mcchunks.. "+1 Elements ",4)
700
        for i=0,mcchunks do
701
        -- what does this log??
702
        ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS: "...
703
           ltx.__tag.page[page][i],4)
        if mcchunks == 0 then
         -- only one chunk so no need for an array
        local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][0]
708
        local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"]
709
         local propname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."_prop"
710
                         = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
         --local objref
         local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct/'..structnum)
         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF: ====>"...
           tostring(objref),5)
        numsentry = pdfpage .. " [".. objref .. "]"
        ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
           page.. " num entry = ".. numsentry,3)
718
        else
        numsentry = pdfpage .. " ["
719
         for i=0,mcchunks do
720
           local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][i]
           local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] or 0
           local propname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."_prop"
           --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
724
           local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct/'..structnum)
725
          numsentry = numsentry .. " ".. objref
727
          end
        numsentry = numsentry .. "] "
728
         ltx.__tag.trace.log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
729
          page.. " num entry = ".. numsentry,3)
730
       end
731
       else
732
        ltx.__tag.trace.log ("INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA: page "..page,3)
733
734
735
      return numsentry
736 end
738 function ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree (abspage)
739 for i=1,abspage do
    line = ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (i) .. "^^J"
    tex.sprint(catlatex,line)
742 end
743 end
(End definition for ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line and ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree.)
744 (/lua)
```

## Part IX

# The tagpdf-roles module Tags, roles and namesspace code Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 (00=tag)
2 (*header)
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-roles-code} {2021-07-03} {0.91}
  {part of tagpdf - code related to roles and structure names}
5 (/header)
```

### 1 Code related to roles and structure names

#### 1.1 Variables

Tags have both a name (a string) and a number (for the lua attribute). Testing a name is easier with a prop, while accessing with a number is better done with a seq. So both are used and must be kept in sync if a new tag is added. The number is only relevant for the MC type, tags with the same name from different names spaces can have the same number.

```
\g__tag_role_tags_seq
   \g__tag_role_tags_prop
                             6 (*package)
                             / \__tag_seq_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_seq %to get names (type/NS) from numbers
                             & \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_prop %to get numbers from names (type/NS)
                            (End definition for \g_tag_role_tags_seq and \g_tag_role_tags_prop.)
                            in pdf 2.0 tags belong to a name space. For every tag we store a default name space.
\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
                            The keys are the tags, the value shorthands like pdf2, or mathml. There is no need to
                            access this from lua, so we use the standard prop commands.
                             9 \prop_new:N
                                               \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop %to namespace info
                            (End definition for \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop.)
     \g__tag_role_NS_prop
                            The standard names spaces are the following. The keys are the name tagpdf will use, the
                            urls are the identifier in the namespace object.
```

```
mathml http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML
pdf2 http://iso.org/pdf2/ssn
pdf http://iso.org/pdf/ssn (default)
user \c__tag_role_userNS_id_str (random id, for user tags)
```

More namespaces are possible and their objects references and the ones of the namespaces must be collected so that an array can be written to the StructTreeRoot at the end (see tagpdf-tree). We use a prop to store also the object reference as it will be needed rather

```
10 \prop_new:N \g__tag_role_NS_prop % collect namespaces
```

```
(End\ definition\ for\ \g_tag_role_NS_prop.)
     We need also a bunch of temporary variables:
```

```
\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
               \verb|\label{loss} $$\label{loss} $$\l
                                                                                                                                                                                                           11 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                          12 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
         \l tag role role namespace tmpa tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                          13 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                           14 \tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
                                                                                                                                                                                                           (End definition for \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl and others.)
```

### 1.2 Namesspaces

The following commands setups a names space. Namespace dictionaries can contain an optional /Schema and /RoleMapNS entry. We only reserve the objects but delay the writing to the finish code, where we can test if the keys and the name spaces are actually needed This commands setups objects for the name space and its rolemap. It also initialize a prop to collect the rolemaps if needed.

 $tag_role_NS_new:nnn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn{\langle shorthand \rangle}{\langle URI-ID \rangle}$ Schema

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn.|)$ 

\\_\_tag\_role\_NS\_new:nnn

```
15 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
    {
16
      \pdf object new:nn {tag/NS/#1}{dict}
      \pdfdict_new:n
                         {g_tag_role/Namespace_#1_dict}
18
      \pdf_object_new:nn {__tag/RoleMapNS/#1}{dict}
      \pdfdict_new:n
                          {g_tag_role/RoleMapNS_#1_dict}
      \pdfdict_gput:nnn
        {g_tag_role/Namespace_#1_dict}
23
        {Type}
24
        {/Namespace}
      \pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN{utf8/string}{#2}\l_tmpa_str
25
      \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpa_str
26
        {
          \pdfdict gput:nnx
28
            {g_tag_role/Namespace_#1_dict}
29
            {NS}
            {\l_tmpa_str}
      %RoleMapNS is added in tree
      \t1_if_empty:nF {#3}
         \pdfdict_gput:nnx{g__tag_role/Namespace_#1_dict}
          {Schema}{#3}
37
38
      \prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#1}{\pdf_object_ref:n{tag/NS/#1}~}
39
```

We need an id for the user space. For the tests it should be possible to set it to a fix value. So we use random numbers which can be fixed by setting a seed. We fake a sort of GUID but not try to be really exact as it doesn't matter ...

```
\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
```

 $(End\ definition\ for\ \verb|\c_tag_role_userNS_id_str.|)$ 

Now we setup the standard names spaces. Currently only if we detect pdf2.0 but this will perhaps have to change if the structure code gets to messy.

## 1.3 Data

In this section we setup the standard data. At first the list of structure types. We split them in three lists, the tags with which are both in the pdf and pdf2 namespace, the one only in pdf and the one with the tags only in pdf2. We also define a rolemap for the pdfII only type to pdf so that they can always be used.

\c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdf\_pdfII\_clist
\c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_only\_pdf\_clist
\c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_only\_pdfII\_clist
\c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_mathml\_clist
\c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdfII\_to\_pdf\_prop

```
63 %
64 \clist\_const:Nn \c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdf\_pdfII\_clist
    {
65
                   %A complete document. This is the root element
      Document,
                   %of any structure tree containing
                   %multiple parts or multiple articles.
      Part,
                   %A large-scale division of a document.
69
                   %A container for grouping related content elements.
      Sect.
      Div,
                   %A generic block-level element or group of elements
      Caption,
                   %A brief portion of text describing a table or figure.
      Index,
      NonStruct,
                   %probably not needed
      Η,
      H1.
76
      Н2,
77
      НЗ,
78
      H4,
```

```
Н5,
      Н6,
81
      Р,
82
                   %list
      L,
83
                   %list item (around label and list item body)
      LI,
84
      Lbl,
                   %list label
      LBody,
                   %list item body
      Table,
                   %table row
      TR,
      TH,
                   %table header cell
      TD,
                   %table data cell
                   %table header (n rows)
      THead,
91
      TBody,
                   %table rows
92
      TFoot,
                   %table footer
93
                   %generic inline marker
      Span,
94
      Link,
                   %
95
      Annot,
      Figure,
      Formula,
      Form,
      % ruby warichu etc ...
      Ruby,
101
      RB,
102
      RT,
103
      Warichu,
104
      WT,
105
      WP,
106
      Artifact % only MC-tag ?...
107
108
111
   {
                 %A relatively self-contained body of text
112
     Art,
                 %constituting a single narrative or exposition
113
     BlockQuote, %A portion of text consisting of one or more paragraphs
114
                 %attributed to someone other than the author of the
115
                 %surrounding text.
116
117
     TOC,
                 %A list made up of table of contents item entries
118
                 %(structure tag TOCI; see below) and/or other
                 %nested table of contents entries
119
     TOCI,
                 %An individual member of a table of contents.
120
121
                 %This entry's children can be any of the following structure tags:
                 \%Lbl, Reference, NonStruct, P, TOC
122
     Index.
123
     Private,
124
     Quote,
                  %inline quote
125
                  %footnote, endnote. Lbl can be child
     Note,
126
     Reference,
                  %A citation to content elsewhere in the document.
127
     BibEntry,
                  %bibentry
128
129
     Code
130
   7
133 {
```

```
{\tt DocumentFragment}
134
      ,Aside
135
      ,H7
136
      ,Н8
137
      ,Н9
138
     ,H10
139
     ,Title
140
141
     ,FENote
      ,Sub
      ,Em
143
      ,Strong
144
      , Artifact
145
146
147
{
149
150
151
      , and
      , annotation
152
      ,apply
      ,approx
      ,arccos
155
156
      ,arccosh
157
      ,arccot
      ,arccoth
158
159
     ,arccsc
     ,arccsch
160
     ,arcsec
161
162
     ,arcsech
      arcsin,
      ,arcsinh
      ,arctan
      , arctanh
166
167
      ,arg
      , bind
168
      ,bvar
169
      ,card
170
      , cartesian product
171
172
      ,cbytes
      ,ceiling
      ,cerror
175
      ,ci
176
      ,cn
      , codomain
177
      , complexes
178
      \tt, compose
179
      , condition
180
      ,conjugate
181
      ,cos
182
183
     ,cosh
      ,cot
185
      ,coth
186
      ,cs
      ,csc
187
```

```
,csch
188
       , csymbol
189
       ,curl
190
       ,declare
191
       ,degree
192
       , determinant
193
       ,diff
194
       ,divergence
195
       ,divide
       ,domain
197
       , {\tt domain} of application
198
       , {\it emptyset}
199
       ,eq
200
       , {\it equivalent}
201
       ,eulergamma
202
       ,exists
203
       ,exp
204
       , {\it exponentiale}
205
       ,factorial
       , factor of
       ,false
       ,floor
209
       ,fn
210
       ,forall
211
       ,gcd
212
213
       ,geq
       ,grad
214
       ,gt
215
       ,ident
216
       ,image
       ,imaginary
218
       ,imaginaryi
219
       , implies
220
       ,in
221
       , infinity
222
       ,int
223
       , integers
224
225
       , intersect
226
       ,interval
       , inverse
       ,lambda
       ,laplacian
230
       ,lcm
       ,leq
231
       ,limit
232
       ,ln
233
       ,log
234
       ,logbase
235
      ,lowlimit
236
237
      ,lt
      , maction
239
      ,maligngroup
       , malignmark
240
```

, math

241

```
242
        \tt,matrix
243
        ,matrixrow
        ,max
245
        ,mean
       ,median
246
       , menclose
247
        ,merror
248
       , {\it mfenced}
249
       ,mfrac
       ,mglyph
251
       ,mi
        ,min
253
       ,minus
254
        , {\tt mlabeledtr}
255
        , {\tt mlongdiv}
256
        , \verb|mmultiscripts||
257
        ,mn
258
259
        ,mo
        , mode
        , {\tt moment}
261
        , {\tt momenta} bout
263
        ,mover
        ,mpadded
        ,mphantom
        \tt , mprescripts
267
       ,mroot
        , mrow
268
       ,ms
269
       \tt ,mscarries
270
271
       ,mscarry
272
       ,msgroup
       ,msline
273
274
        \tt , mspace
275
        , msqrt
276
        \tt,msrow
        \tt , mstack
277
        \tt,mstyle
278
        ,msub
279
280
        \tt , msubsup
        , msup
        ,mtable
        ,mtd
        \tt ,mtext
        ,mtr
        , \it munder
        , \verb|munder| over|
287
        , \verb|natural| \verb|numbers|
        ,neq
289
       ,none
290
291
       ,not
       ,notanumber
       ,notin
294
       ,notprsubset
```

 $, {\it not subset}$ 

295

```
, {\it outerproduct}
298
      ,partialdiff
299
     ,pi
300
     ,piece
301
     ,piecewise
302
     ,plus
303
     ,power
     ,primes
     ,product
     ,prsubset
307
     ,quotient
308
      ,rationals
309
      ,real
310
      ,reals
311
      ,reln
312
313
      ,rem
      ,root
      ,scalarproduct
      ,sdev
316
      ,sec
317
      , sech
318
      , selector
319
      ,semantics
320
     ,sep
321
     ,set
322
     ,setdiff
323
324
     ,share
     sin,
     sinh,
      ,subset
      ,sum
328
      ,tan
329
      ,tanh
330
      , {\it tendsto}
331
      ,times
332
      ,transpose
333
334
      ,true
      ,union
      ,uplimit
      , variance
      , vector
338
      , {\it vector product}
339
     ,xor
340
341
342
   343
344
345
      DocumentFragment = Art,
346
      Aside = Note,
      Title = H1,
347
      Sub = Span,
348
             = H6 ,
      Н7
349
```

296

297

,or
,otherwise

```
= H6 ,
             = H6.
      Н9
351
      H10 = H6
352
      FENote = Note,
353
      Em
             = Span,
354
      Strong= Span,
355
(End\ definition\ for\ \c_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdf\_pdfII\_clist\ and\ others.)
    We fill the structure tags in to the seq. We allow all pdf1.7 and pdf2.0, and role map
if needed the 2.0 tags.
357 % get tag name from number: \seq_item:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { n }
358 % get tag number from name: \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_prop { name }
359
  \clist_map_inline:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII_clist
360
    {
361
       \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
362
       \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf2 }
364
  \clist_map_inline:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdf_clist
365
366
       367
       \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf }
368
369
  \clist_map_inline:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII_clist
370
371
       \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
372
       \prop_gput:Nnn \g_tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ pdf2 }
373
    7
374
  \pdf_version_compare:NnT > {1.9}
375
376
        \clist_map_inline:Nn \c__tag_role_sttags_mathml_clist
377
378
            \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
379
            \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
                                                       { #1 }{ mathml }
380
381
382
    }
For luatex and the MC we need a name/number relation. The name space is not relevant.
  \int step inline:nnnn { 1 }{ 1 }{ \seq count:N \g tag role tags seq }
383
384
    {
       \__tag_prop_gput:Nxn \g__tag_role_tags_prop
385
386
           \seq_item:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
        7
         { #1 }
389
    7
390
```

## Adding new tags and rolemapping

# 1.4.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier

Н8

350

With this versions only RoleMap is filled. At first the dictionary:

```
g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict
                              391 \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
                               (End definition for g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict.)
                              The pdf 1.7 version has only two arguments: new and rolemap name. To make pdf 2.0
  \__tag_role_add_tag:nn
                               types usable we directly define a rolemapping for them.
                                 \verb|\cs_new_protected:Nn \ | \_tag_role_add_tag:nn \ \%(new) \ name, \ reference \ to \ old
                                      \prop_if_in:NnF \g__tag_role_tags_prop {#1}
                              394
                              395
                                           \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
                              396
                                             {
                              397
                                                \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
                                            \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \g__tag_role_tags_seq { #1 }
                                            \__tag_prop_gput:Nnx \g__tag_role_tags_prop
                                                 \scalebox{$\leq$} count:N \g_tag_role_tags_seq
                                                                                                { #1 }{ user }
                              405
                                            \prop\_gput: \prop\_gput: \prop\_tag\_role\_tags\_NS\_prop
                              406
                                      \_tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#2}
                              407
                                      \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
                              408
                              409
                                           \pdfdict_gput:nnx {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
                              410
                              411
                                             {\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#2}}
                              413
                                    7
                              414
                                 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {VV}
                              415
                              416
                                 \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {2.0}
                              417
                                    {
                              418
                                        \label{lem:normap_inline:Nn log_tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to_pdf_prop} $$ \operatorname{prop\_map\_inline:Nn \ \ \ \ \ } $$ c\_tag\_role\_sttags\_pdfII\_to\_pdf\_prop. $$ $$
                              419
                              420
                                            \_tag_role_add_tag:nn {#1}{#2}
                              421
                              422
                                    }
                              424
                              (End definition for \__tag_role_add_tag:nn.)
                              1.4.2 The pdf 2.0 version
                              The pdf 2.0 version takes four arguments: tag/namespace/role/namespace
\__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn
                              425 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn %tag/namespace/role/namespace
                              426
                                      \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
                              427
```

\msg\_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}

\\_\_tag\_seq\_gput\_right:Nn \g\_\_tag\_role\_tags\_seq { #1 }

\\_\_tag\_prop\_gput:Nnx \g\_\_tag\_role\_tags\_prop { #1 }

430

431

432

```
433
          {
            \label{lem:lem:norm} $$ \eq_count: N \eg_tag_role_tags_seq $$
434
435
                                                     { #1 }{ #2 }
       436
       \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#3}
437
       \pdfdict_gput:nnx {g_tag_role/RoleMapNS_#2_dict}{#1}
438
          {
439
              \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#3}
441
442
              \c_space_tl
              \pdf_object_ref:n {tag/NS/#4}
443
            7
444
445
446
447 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn {VVVV}
```

(End definition for \\_\_tag\_role\_add\_tag:nnnn.)

### Key-val user interface 1.5

The user interface use the key add-new-tag, which takes either a keyval list as argument, or a tag/role.

```
tag
   tag-namespace
                                                      448 \keys_define:nn { __tag / tag-role }
                                  role
                                                                              ,tag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
role-namespace
                                                                             ,tag-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
          add-new-tag
                                                                             ,role .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
                                                       453
                                                                              ,role-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
                                                       454
                                                       455
                                                       456 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                                                       457
                                                                       {
                                                                             add-new-tag .code:n =
                                                       458
                                                       459
                                                                                         \keys_set_known:nnnN
                                                       460
                                                                                               {__tag/tag-role}
                                                       461
                                                                                                      tag-namespace=user,
                                                                                                     role-namespace=, %so that we can test for it.
                                                                                               {_{tag/tag-role}\ll_{tmpa_tl}}
                                                                                         \t! \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpa_tl
                                                                                               {
                                                                                                       \ensuremath{\verb||} \ensuremath{\ensuremath{||} \ensuremath{\ensuremat
                                                                                                       \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq {1} }
                                                       470
                                                                                                       \tl_set:Nx \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq {2} }
                                                       471
                                                                                     \tl_if_empty:NT \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
                                                                                                       \prop_get:NVNTF
                                                       475
                                                                                                              \g_{tag_role_tags_NS_prop}
                                                       476
                                                                                                              \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
                                                       477
```

```
478
                    {
479
                         \label{lem:nvf} $$ \Prop_if_in:NVF \leq _tag_role_NS_prop_\label{lem:nvf} $$ l_tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl $$
481
                             \verb|\tl_set:Nn \ll_tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl \ \{user\}|
                    }
                    {
                       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl {user}
                    }
               }
           \pdf_{version\_compare:NnTF} < \{2.0\}
489
490
              %TODO add check for emptyness?
491
                 \__tag_role_add_tag:VV
492
                      \verb|\label{local_tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl}|
493
                      \label{local_tag_role_role_tmpa_tl} $$ l_tag_role_role_tmpa_tl $$
             }
               \__tag_role_add_tag:VVVV
                  \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
                  \verb|\label{local_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl}| \\
                  \verb|\label{local_tag_role_role_tmpa_tl}|
500
                  \label{local_tag_role_role_names} $$ l_tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_t1 $$
501
502
        }
503
      }
504
505 (/package)
```

(End definition for tag and others. These functions are documented on page  $\ref{eq:page-1}$  .)

## Part X

# The tagpdf-space module Code related to real space chars Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 \( \QQ = tag \)
2 \( \frac{*header}{}
3 \\ \ProvidesExplPackage \{ tagpdf-space-code \} \{ 2021-07-03 \} \{ 0.91 \}
4 \{ part of tagpdf - code related to real space chars \}
5 \( \frac{header}{}
\)
```

# 1 Code for interword spaces

The code is engine/backend dependant. Basically only pdftex and luatex support real space chars. Most of the code for luatex which uses attributes is in the lua code, here are only the keys.

# interwordspace show-spaces

```
6 (*package)
  7 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
                          \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
                                          \pdfglyphtounicode{space}{0020}
                                         \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                                                         interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on } { \pdfinterwordspaceon },
                                                         interwordspace .choices:nn = { false, off }{ \pdfinterwordspaceon },
                                                         interwordspace .default:n = true,
                                                         show-spaces .bool\_set: N = \label{eq:normalization} $$ loss = \label{eq:loss} $$ loss = \label{eq:normalization} $$ loss = \label{eq:loss} $$ loss 
18
                                }
                                         \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                                                         interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on, false, off }
                                                                 { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{dvi} },
                                                         interwordspace .default:n = true,
                                                         show-spaces .bool_set:N = \label{eq:N-spaces_bool} = \label{eq:N-spaces_bool}
                                }
                }
32 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
                         \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                                         interwordspace .choices:nn =
36
                                                                                                                                             { true, on }
```

```
\bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
                   39
                                                          \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon()}
                                                       },
                              interwordspace .choices:nn =
                                                       { false, off }
                                                        \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
                                                        \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff()}
                                                       },
                              interwordspace .default:n = true,
                              show-spaces
                                               .choice:,
                             show-spaces
                                          / true .code:n =
                   50
                                                       {\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces=true}},
                   51
                              show-spaces / false .code:n =
                   52
                                                       {\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces=nil}},
                   53
                              show-spaces .default:n = true
                   54
                   55
                       }
                   56
                   57
                     \sys_if_engine_xetex:T
                   58
                   59
                       {
                          \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
                   60
                   61
                            {
                              interwordspace .choices:nn = { true, on }
                   62
                                { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{xetex} },
                   63
                              interwordspace .choices:nn = { false, off }
                                { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{xetex} },
                              interwordspace .default:n = true,
                              68
                       }
                   69
                   (End definition for interwordspace and show-spaces. These functions are documented on page ??.)
                   For luatex we need a command for the fake space as equivalent of the pdftex primitive.
\__tag_fakespace:
                   70 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
                       {
                   71
                          \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_fakespace:
                   73
                              \group_begin:
                   74
                              \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.fakespace()}
                              \skip_horizontal:n{\c_zero_skip}
                              \group_end:
                       7
                   80 (/package)
                   (End definition for \__tag_fakespace:.)
```

# Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	box commands:
\\ 10	\box_dp:N 173, 177
\□	\box_ht:N 163
	\box_new:N 77, 78
A	\box_set_dp:Nn 171, 173
activate <u>178</u>	\box_set_eq:NN 186
activate-all $\dots $ $\underline{153}$	\box_set_ht:Nn 170, 172
activate-mc <u>153</u>	\box_use_drop:N 175, 179
activate-space <u>153</u>	\boxmaxdepth 57, 174
activate-struct <u>153</u>	-
activate-tree	C
actualtext 46, 73, 198, 293, 357	\c
actualtext-o	c@g internal commands:
actualtext-oulliang 293	\c@g_tag_MCID_abs_int
add-new-tag	9, 21, 30, 43, 45, 50, 61, 67,
\AddToHook 13, 16, 51, 209, 223, 236, 270	112, 131, 163, 233, 238, 267, 307, 340
AF	\c@g_tag_parenttree_obj_int <u>52</u>
AFinline	\c@gtag_struct_abs_int
AFinline-o	0.06 $0.04$ $0.01$ $0.02$ $0.02$ $0.02$ $0.02$ $0.03$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$ $0.04$
alttext	106, 304, 310, 323, 335, 347, 359, 371, 383, 390, 403, 415, 427, 438,
artifact	442, 443, 446, 448, 454, 458, 459,
artifact	462, 464, 473, 474, 475, 476, 479,
artifact-bool 102	482, 486, 499, 501, 507, 642, 645, 687
artifact-type internal commands:	clist commands:
artifact-type <u>102</u>	\clist_const:Nn 64, 79, 80, 110, 132, 148
attr-unknown 33	\clist_map_inline:Nn 360, 365, 370, 377
attribute 74, 649	\clist_map_inline:nn 397
attribute-class $\dots \dots $	\clist_new:N 75
	\clist_set:Nn 619, 653
В	color commands:
bool commands:	\color_select:n 217, 230
\bool_gset_eq:NN 285, 294	cs commands:
\bool_gset_false:N 31, 45, 190, 286, 351	\cs_generate_variant:Nn
\bool_gset_true:N 30, 39, 160, 319	$\dots$ 37, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98,
\bool_if:NTF 9, 9,	98, 99, 100, 105, 113, 121, 124, 126,
18, 23, 24, 33, 33, 69, 133, 155, 169,	140, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145,
177, 181, 192, 211, 212, 215, 220,	152, 153, 230, 284, 295, 415, 447, 588
225, 225, 228, 238, 254, 321, 338, 503	\cs_gset_eq:NN
\bool_if:nTF	\cs_if_exist:NTF 53, 240, 272
\bool_lazy_all:nTF	\cs_if_exist_p:N 9
\bool_lazy_and:nnTF 64, 74	\cs_if_free:NTF 39
\bool_lazy_and_p:nn 8 \bool_new:N 11, 15, 16, 29, 56,	\cs_new:Nn
82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 88, 90, 200, 201, 281	\cs_new:Npn 9, 44, 55,
\bool_set_false:N	57, 61, 90, 122, 127, 160, 197, 285, 589
149, 150, 161, 191, 262, 284	\cs_new_protected:Nn
\bool_set_true:N 87, 89, 261	. 72, 154, 185, 346, 392, 425, 528, 554
(2501_505_5140.11 61, 69, 201	. 12, 101, 100, 010, 002, 120, 020, 004

\cs_new_protected:Npn 15, 16, 25, 29, 32, 35, 38, 44, 50, 56, 57, 58, 60, 63, 67, 69, 71, 77, 82, 82, 86, 90, 97, 100, 101, 106, 110,	\fontshape 6 \fontsize 6 \footins 243
115, 115, 118, 120, 125, 131, 139,	${f G}$
142, 146, 146, 147, 147, 153, 154,	group commands:
154, 166, 177, 178, 182, 182, 187,	\group_begin:
201, 210, 212, 231, 234, 251, 265,	74, 148, 158, 317, 437, 453, 472
266, 267, 268, 274, 279, 282, 285,	\group_end:
290, 296, 300, 304, 313, 468, 579, 602	77, 152, 182, 343, 449, 465, 523
\cs_set:Npn 38, 43	, . , . ,,,
$\cs_{set_eq}:NN \dots 43, 46, 47, 48,$	H
73, 74, 75, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135,	hbox commands:
136, 137, 138, 152, 227, 228, 229,	\hbox_set:Nn 164, 165
302, 303, 304, 305, 309, 310, 311, 312	hook commands:
\cs_set_protected:Nn 167	\hook_gput_code:nnn
\cs_set_protected:Npn	7, 7, 21, 26, 50, 53,
9, 16, 23, 30, 49, 56	180, 181, 223, 227, 317, 330, 340, 353
\cs_to_str:N 12, 19, 26, 33, 52, 53, 59, 60	\hook_use:n 214
D	•
D	I
\DeclareDocumentMetadata	if commands:
\DeclareOption 30, 31	\if_mode_horizontal: 19
default commands:	\ignorespaces
default_fontid	int commands:
default_space_char 432	\int_case:nnTF 167
dim commands:	\int_compare:nNnTF
\c_max_dim 162, 187	
\c_zero_dim 170, 171, 172	156, 159, 166, 184, 190, 218, 396, 427
\documentclass 22	\int_compare:nTF
TD.	77, 224, 635, 637, 639, 657, 683
E	\int_eval:n . 88, 131, 232, 255, 272,
E	304, 310, 323, 335, 347, 359, 371,
exclude-header-footer	383, 390, 403, 415, 427, 474, 475,
\ExecuteOptions 32	476, 479, 482, 486, 507, 642, 645, 687
exp commands:	\int_gincr:N 163, 213, 233, 307, 473
\exp_args:Ne 287, 477	\int_gset:Nn
\exp_args:Nee	\int_gzero:N 8, 259
\exp_args:NNno 469	\int_new:N 10, 76, 81, 202
\exp_args:NNnx 39	\int_rand:n 43, 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53
\exp_args:NNx 39, 79, 82, 188, 208	\int_set:Nn 163, 166, 169, 170, 171
\exp_args:Nnx 60, 273, 310, 314, 411	\int_step_inline:nnnn
\exp_args:NV 173, 310, 324, 335	46, 71, 74, 91, 209, 215, 383
\exp_args:Nx 115, 240	\int_to_Hex:n 43, 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53
\exp_not:n 272	$\int \int \int dx $
<u>_</u>	21, 30, 43, 44, 45, 50, 61, 67, 101,
<b>F</b>	104, 106, 110, 112, 114, 126, 217,
fi commands:	230, 238, 267, 340, 438, 442, 443,
\fi: 19	446, 448, 454, 458, 459, 462, 464, 589
file commands:	intarray commands:
\file_input:n 188	\intarray_gset:Nnn 187
\fontencoding 6	\intarray_item:Nn 189, 192
\fontfamily $6$	\intarray_new:Nn 179
\fontseries 6	interwordspace $\dots \dots \underline{6}$

low commands:		
Niow_now:Nn   136, 139, 145, 149, 167, 191	iow commands:	lua commands:
A	\iow_newline: 171, 198	
Second	\iow_now:Nn 39	11, 12, 19, 19, 26, 28, 33, 35, 40,
K   S7, 97, 102, 111, 122, 124, 129, 140   204, 212, 226, 243, 260, 277, 290, 300	\iow_term:n 136, 139, 145, 149, 167, 191	40, 43, 45, 46, 51, 52, 52, 53, 53,
Reys commands:		59, 60, 60, 64, 75, 77, 77, 78, 85,
News_define:nn	$\mathbf{K}$	87, 97, 102, 111, 122, 124, 129, 140,
Maximin   185   185   186   186   187	keys commands:	204, 212, 226, 243, 260, 277, 290, 300
1.2, 21, 34, 54, 60, 66, 102, 128, 153, 171, 183, 198, 203, 293, 297, 357, 420, 448, 456, 608, 615, 649	\keys_define:nn	
128, 153, 171, 183, 198, 203, 293, 297, 357, 420, 448, 456, 608, 615, 649	<b>5</b> –	$\mathbf{M}$
297, 357, 420, 448, 456, 608, 615, 649		\maxdimen 185
News_set:nn		mc-current
The state of the		
L	• -	mc-label-unknown $\underline{9}$
L		
label	(moyb_boo_miown.mmm,	
label	T.	mc-not-open 13
lang		mc-popped
legacy commands:		
Negacy_if:nTF   37		<del>-</del>
Name	<u> </u>	ma-wand-ti an 10
log		\Manage Basels 15 10 20 21
tx. internal commands:   1txtag, func.fakespace	-	meg commande:
1tx _ tag.func.fakespace   351		
ltxtag.func.fill_parent_treeline		\msg error:nnn 170 248 625 663
line		
Section   Sect		\msg info:nnnn 131
ltxtag.func.get_tag_from   277     ltxtag.func.mark_page   elements   521     ltxtag.func.mark_shipout   673     ltxtag.func.markspaceoff   415     ltxtag.func.markspaceon   415     ltxtag.func.mc_insert_kids   469     ltxtag.func.output_num_from   258     ltxtag.func.output_parenttree     ltxtag.func.output_tag_from   277     ltxtag.func.output_tag_from   277     ltxtag.func.space_chars   shipout   436     ltxtag.func.store_mc_data   292     ltxtag.func.store_mc_label   297     ltxtag.func.store_mc_label   297     ltxtag.func.store_struct   mcabs   501     ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data   214     ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data   214     ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data   214     ltxtag.trace.show_seq   180     ltx.		-
1txtag.func.mark_page  elements	ltxtag.func.get_num_from $258$	
27, 29, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41		- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
The method   Strict   Strict	<pre>ltxtag.func.mark_page</pre>	
htttag.func.mark_shipout   htttag.func.markspaceoff   txtag.func.markspaceoff   d15     htxtag.func.markspaceon   d15     htxtag.func.markspaceon   d15     htxtag.func.markspaceon   d15     htxtag.func.mc_insert_kids   d69     htxtag.func.mc_insert_kids   d69     htxtag.func.mc_num_of_kids   d307     htxtag.func.output_num_from   258     htxtag.func.output_parenttree   d92     htxtag.func.output_tag_from   277     htxtag.func.output_tag_from   277     htxtag.func.output_tag_from   277     htxtag.func.space_chars   shipout   d36     htxtag.func.store_mc_data   292     htxtag.func.store_mc_data   292     htxtag.func.store_mc_label   297     htxtag.func.store_mc_label   297     htxtag.func.store_struct     mcabs   501     htxtag.func.store_mc_label   297     htxtag.func.store_struct     mcabs   501     htxtag.func.store_struct     htxtag.func.store_struct     htxtag.func.store_struct     htxtag.func.store_struct     htxtag.func.store_stru	elements $\underline{521}$	
Ttx	ltxtag.func.mark_shipout $673$	
1txtag.func.mc_insert_kids       469         1txtag.func.mc_num_of_kids       307         1txtag.func.output_num_from       258         1txtag.func.output_parenttree       692         1txtag.func.output_tag_from       277         1txtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336         1txtag.func.space_chars       newattribute         shipout       436         1txtag.func.store_mc_data       292         1txtag.func.store_mc_data       292         1txtag.func.store_mc_kid       301         1txtag.func.store_mc_label       297         1txtag.func.store_struct       mcabs         mcabs       501         1txtag.trace.log       172         1txtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       214         1txtag.trace.show_mc_data       214         1txtag.trace.show_seq       180         180       \pdf_bdc:nn           24, 36, 45, 63, 65, 94,         117, 124, 135, 143, 151, 174, 197, 575         new-tag       new-tag         new-tag       new-tag         new-tag       new-tag         new-tag       new-tag         new-tag       189         NewDocumentCommand	ltxtag.func.markspaceoff $415$	
1txtag.func.mc_insert_kids       469         1txtag.func.mc_num_of_kids       307         1txtag.func.output_num_from       258         1txtag.func.output_parenttree       692         1txtag.func.output_tag_from       277         1txtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336         1txtag.func.space_chars       \newcommand       261, 262         1txtag.func.store_mc_data       292       \newcounter       7, 8, 52         shipout       436       \newDocumentCommand       7,         1txtag.func.store_mc_in_page       513       \newlabeldata       41         1txtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newmarks       10         1txtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         1txtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         1txtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       214       paratagging       27, 203         1txtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging-show       27, 203         1txtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         1txtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	ltxtag.func.markspaceon $415$	
ltxtag.func.mc_num_of_kids       307         ltxtag.func.output_num_from       258         ltxtag.func.output_parenttree       692         ltxtag.func.output_tag_from       277         ltxtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336         ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcommand       261, 262         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292         ltxtag.func.store_mc_in_page       513         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297         ltxtag.func.store_struct       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.trace.log       172         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189         pdf_bdc:nn       229         \pdf_bdc:nn       229	ltxtag.func.mc_insert_kids $469$	
ltxtag.func.output_parenttree       692       new-tag       37         ltxtag.func.output_tag_from       277       new-tag       74, 602         ltxtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336       \newcommand       261, 262         ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcounter       7, 8, 52         shipout       436       \newDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       214       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	ltxtag.func.mc_num_of_kids $307$	
ltxtag.func.output_parenttree       692       new-tag       37         ltxtag.func.output_tag_from       277       newattribute       74, 602         ltxtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336       \newcommand       261, 262         ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcounter       7, 8, 52         shipout       436       \newDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	ltxtag.func.output_num_from . 258	N
ltxtag.func.output_tag_from       277         ltxtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336         ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcommand       261, 262         shipout       436         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       \newDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_in_page       513       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newmarks       10         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	ltxtag.func.output_parenttree 692	
ltxtag.func.pdf_object_ref       336       \newcommand       261, 262         ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcounter       7, 8, 52         shipout       436       \NewDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229		, new bug
ltxtag.func.space_chars       \newcounter       7, 8, 52         shipout       436       \NewDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229		11ewattiibute
shipout       436       \NewDocumentCommand       7,         ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292       11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301       \newlabeldata       41         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297       \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct       mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229		Tiewcommand 201, 202
ltxtag.func.store_mc_data       292         ltxtag.func.store_mc_in_page       513         ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297         ltxtag.func.store_struct mcabs       501         ltxtag.trace.log       172         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180     11, 17, 23, 28, 32, 37, 42, 49, 195, 263  Newlabeldata         10       nointerlineskip       178         P       1txtag.trace.log       172         PackageError       13         Paratagging       27, 203         Paratagging-show       27, 203		
ltxtag.func.store_mc_in_page       513	<del>-</del>	(Now200dimon000minana ,
ltxtag.func.store_mc_kid       301 \newmarks       10         ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297 \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct mcabs       501 P         ltxtag.trace.log       172 \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229 paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214 paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189 pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180 \Pdf_bdc:nn       229		11, 11, 20, 20, 02, 01, 12, 10, 100, 200
ltxtag.func.store_mc_label       297 \nointerlineskip       178         ltxtag.func.store_struct         mcabs       501 P         ltxtag.trace.log       172 \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229 paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214 paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189 pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180 \Pdf_bdc:nn       229		(20012002000
ltxtag.func.store_struct       p         mcabs		(nowmarks
mcabs       501       P         ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	_	\nointerlineskip \ldots 178
ltxtag.trace.log       172       \PackageError       13         ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging-show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229		D
ltxtag.trace.show_all_mc_data       229       paratagging       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data       214       paratagging - show       27, 203         ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229		·
ltxtag.trace.show_mc_data		. 3
ltxtag.trace.show_prop       189       pdf commands:         ltxtag.trace.show_seq       180       \pdf_bdc:nn       229	_	
ltxtag.trace.show_seq <u>180</u> \pdf_bdc:nn 229		7
ttxtag.trace.show_struct_data 235 \pdf_bmc:n 227		
	ltxtag.trace.show_struct_data 235	\pdf_bmc:n 227

\pdf_emc: 228	prop commands:
\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n	\prop_clear:N 73
306, 412, 441	\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn 343
\pdf_object_if_exist:n 91	\prop_count:N 94
<pre>\pdf_object_if_exist:nTF</pre>	\prop_get:NnNTF
	89, 96, 112, 127, 243, 307, 475
\pdf_object_new:nn	\prop_gput:Nnn 25,
17, 19, 20, 51, 146, 176, 186, 478	27, 39, 91, 94, 95, 96, 133, 147, 291,
\pdf_object_ref:n 29, 37,	363, 368, 373, 380, 405, 436, 604, 672
39, 41, 89, 92, 102, 106, 120, 183,	\prop_if_exist:NTF 25, 558
198, 279, 429, 443, 448, 464, 510, 571	\prop_if_in:NnTF 59,
\pdf_object_ref_last: 136, 672	84, 92, 172, 225, 394, 480, 623, 661, 665
\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn 128, 667	\prop_item:Nn 32, 63, 83, 110,
\pdf_object_write:nn	136, 162, 229, 290, 299, 358, 670, 677
141, 149, 177, 193, 200, 205, 241	\prop_map_inline:Nn 189, 419
\pdf_pageobject_ref:n 96	\prop_map_tokens:Nn 207
\pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN 25	\prop_new:N 9, 10, 11, 72, 131, 598, 601
\pdf_uncompress: 184	\prop_put:Nnn 80, 96
\pdf_version_compare:NnTF	\prop_show:N
55, 375, 417, 489	58, 88, 138, 518, 521, 645, 666
pdfannot commands:	\ProvidesExplFile 3
<pre> \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn </pre>	\ProvidesExplPackage
	3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 594
\pdfannot_link_ref_last: 334, 357	, , , , , , , , , ,
pdfdict commands:	${f Q}$
<pre>.   \pdfdict_gput:nnn</pre>	158, 159
	•
\pdfdict_if_empty:nTF 191	$\mathbf{R}$
\pdfdict_if_empty:nTF 191 \pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391	R raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391	
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, <u>193</u>	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
\pdfdict_new:n	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile_commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands:	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182	raw
\pdfdict_new:n	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182 prg commands: \prg_do_nothing:	raw
\pdfdict_new:n	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182 prg commands: \prg_do_nothing:	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182 prg commands: \prg_do_nothing:	raw
\pdfdict_new:n	raw
\pdfdict_new:n	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182 prg commands: \prg_do_nothing: 182 prg_do_nothing: 91 \prg_generate_conditional variant:Nnn 91 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn	raw
\pdfdict_new:n 18, 20, 391 \pdfdict_use:n 151, 195, 202 \pdffakespace 26, 193 pdffile commands: \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 94, 440, 456 \pdfglyphtounicode 11 \pdfinterwordspaceon 14, 15 pdfmanagement commands: \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 25, 26, 176, 178, 180, 229 \pdfmanagement_if_active_p: 9, 10 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 182 prg commands: \prg_do_nothing:	raw
\pdfdict_new:n	raw

$\scalebox{169},$	struct-missing-tag $\underline{26}$
383, 403, 434, 635, 637, 639, 657, 683	$\mathtt{struct} \mathtt{-no}\mathtt{-objnum}  \dots  \underline{22}$
$\ensuremath{\texttt{\sc var}}$ _ get:NNTF 257, 493, 541, 548	struct-show-closing $\dots \dots \underline{31}$
$\seq_gpop:NN \dots 534$	struct-stack 26, <u>171</u>
$\scalebox{seq\_gpop:NNTF}$	struct-used-twice $\dots \dots \underline{27}$
$\ensuremath{\texttt{\sc seq\_gpop\_left:NN}}\ \dots \ 144$	sys commands:
$\ensuremath{\mbox{seq\_gpush:Nn}}$ . 12, 14, 69, 76, 499, 500	\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
$\seq_gput_left:Nn \dots 149, 627$	$\dots 30, 32, 46, 47, 58, 70, 71, 186, 193$
\seq_gput_right:Nn 32, 134, 134, 234	\sys_if_engine_pdftex:TF 7, 48
\seq_gremove_duplicates:N 157	\sys_if_engine_xetex:TF 58
$\ensuremath{\texttt{\sc veq}\_}$ gset $\ensuremath{\texttt{\sc eq}}$ :NN 152, 164, 214	\sys_if_output_pdf:TF 9, 11
\seq_if_empty:NTF 193	$\verb sys-no-interwordspace  \underline{41}$
$\verb \seq_item:Nn  \dots \dots 109, 111,$	
118, 122, 129, 133, 135, 188, 257,	${f T}$
259, 266, 300, 301, 357, 387, 470, 471	tabsorder <u>174</u>
$\ensuremath{\mbox{ seq\_log:N}}\ \dots \dots \ 163, 168, 174, 192$	tag $46, 72, \underline{198}, \underline{293}, \underline{357}, \underline{448}$
$\verb \seq_map_inline:Nn  . 158, 215, 621, 659 $	tag commands:
$\seq_new:N \dots 11, 11, 12,$	\tag_get:n 13, 83, 44, 44, 69, 72
13, 13, 13, 14, 15, 18, 73, 74, 132, 599	\tag_if_active: 45
$\scalebox{seq\_put\_right:Nn} \dots 159$	$\text{tag\_if\_active:TF}$
\seq_remove_all:Nn 162	\tag_if_active_p: 13, <u>45</u>
\seq_set_eq:NN 200, 201	<pre>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n</pre>
$\scalebox{seq\_set\_from\_clist:NN}$ $620, 654$	$45, \underline{50}, 50$
$\scalebox{seq\_set\_from\_clist:Nn } 80, 83, 189, 209$	<pre>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</pre>
\seq_set_map:NNn 158, 629	45, 50, 57
$\scalebox{ seq_set_split:Nnn } \dots 98, 299, 469$	\tag_mc_begin:n
$\scalebox{seq\_show:N}$ . 51, 137, 141, 142, 160,	$$ 8, 45, 13, 53, 94, $\underline{154}$ , 154,
161, 163, 175, 244, 502, 519, 522, 531	$216, 220, 229, 287, \underline{313}, 313, 323, 346$
\seq_use:Nn	\tag_mc_begin_pop:n
103, 104, 158, 159, 169, 198, 200, 636	$45, 61, \underline{63}, 82, 337, 360$
\l_tmpa_seq 214, 234, 244, 469, 470, 471	$\text{tag_mc_end: } 45, 20, 60, 73, \underline{185}, 185,$
shipout commands:	$218, 227, 231, 293, \underline{313}, 335, 346, 358$
\g_shipout_readonly_int	\tag_mc_end_push:
$\dots \dots $	$45, 52, \underline{63}, 63, 321, 344$
show-spaces $\underline{6}$	$\text{tag_mc_if_in:} \dots \underline{59}, 73, 225$
\ShowTagging	\tag_mc_if_in:TF 45, 30, <u>218</u>
skip commands:	\tag_mc_if_in_p:
\skip_horizontal:n 76	\tag_mc_use:n 45, 25, <u>29</u> , 29
\c_zero_skip 76	\tag_stop_group_begin:
stash	
\stepcounter 282	$\text{tag\_stop\_group\_end}: 59, \underline{146}, 152, 292$
str commands:	\tag_struct_begin:n
\str_const:Nn 41	72, 34, 214, 322, 345, <u>468</u> , 468
\str_if_eq:nnTF 120, 266	\tag_struct_end:
\str_if_eq_p:nn 257, 259	$$ 72, 39, 233, 336, 359, $\underline{468}$ , 528
\str_new:N 71	\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn
$\str_set_convert: Nnnn \dots 99,$	$$ 72, 89, 334, 357, $\underline{579}$ , 579, 588
219, 236, 253, 270, 317, 329, 341,	<pre>\tag_struct_parent_int:</pre>
353, 365, 370, 377, 380, 390, 400, 409	72, 89, 327, 334, 350, 357, <u>579,</u> 589
\str_use:N 230, 247, 264, 283	$\texttt{\tag\_struct\_use:n}  \dots  \textit{72},  44,  \underline{554},  554$
$\verb lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:lem:$	tag internal commands:
\string $20, 21, 22, 251$	tag_activate_mark_space $\dots$ 415
struct-faulty-nesting $\dots 23$	$\g_{\text{_tag_active_mc_bool}}$
struct-label-unknown 29	33, 50, 64, 82, 156

$\label{local_local_local_local_local_local} $$1tag_active_mc_bool $53,64,86,150$$	\_tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF 247
\g_tag_active_space_bool	\_tag_check_mc_in_galley_p: 247
0.00000000000000000000000000000000000	\_tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn
\gtag_active_struct_bool	70, 77, 90, 93, 98, <u>154,</u> 154
	\_tag_check_mc_tag:N
\ltag_active_struct_bool	
	\_tag_check_mc_used:n
\gtag_active_tree_bool	
	\g_tag_check_mc_used_intarray
\tag_add_document_structure:n .	
	\_tag_check_no_open_struct:
\tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn	
58, <u>160</u> , 160, 212	\tag_check_show_MCID_by_page: .
\tag_add_missing_mcs_to	<u>201,</u> 201
$\mathtt{stream:Nn}  \dots  \underline{58},$	\tag_check_struct_used:n
58, <u>182</u> , 182, 243, 247, 254, 256	110, 110, 561
\gtag_attr_class_used_seq	\tag_check_structure_has_tag:n
$157, 158, \underline{597}, 627$	82, 82, 486
\gtag_attr_entries_prop	\tag_check_structure_tag:N
$\dots$ 163, $597$ , 604, 623, 661, 666, 670	$$ $\underline{90}$ , $90$ , $302$
$\_$ _tag_attr_new_entry:nn $\underline{602}$ , $602$ , $612$	\tag_check_typeout_v:n
\gtag_attr_objref_prop	$\dots $ 43, 43, 103, 104, 107,
$$ $\underline{597}$ , 665, 672, 677	142, 150, 157, 167, 195, 204, 246, 251
\ltag_attr_value_tl	\tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
$\dots$ $597$ , 655, 674, 679, 681, 685, 689	
\tag_check_add_tag_role:nn	\tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
120, 120, 120, 407, 437	290, 304, 305
\tag_check_if_active_mc: 62	tag_fakespace
\_tag_check_if_active_mc:TF	\_tag_fakespace: <u>70, 72, 197</u>
<u>62</u> , 65, 84, 156, 184, 187, 315, 348	\_tag_finish_structure:
\_tag_check_if_active_struct: 72	
\_tag_check_if_active_struct:TF	\_tag_get_data_mc_tag:
\_tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: 247	\_tag_get_data_struct_tag: 285, 285
\tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF .	tag_get_mathsubtype
	\_tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: 9, 9, 19, 20,
\_tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: 253	60, 90, 93, 101, 143, 151, 170, 179,
\tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF	206, 214, 230, 247, 264, 281, 294, 304
	tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag 244
\tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing	tag_get_num_from 258
p: <u>253</u>	tag_get_tag_from <u>277</u>
\tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: 264	\tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:
\tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF	268, 277, 305, 312
$\dots \dots $	\tag_hook_kernel_after_head:
\tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing	266, 275, 304, 311
p: <u>264</u>	\tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: .
\tag_check_info_closing	267, 276, 303, 310
struct:n <u>97, 97, 105, 537</u>	\tag_hook_kernel_before_head: .
\tag_check_init_mc_used:	265, 274, 302, 309
177, 177, 180, 186	\gtag_in_mc_bool <u>11</u> , 18,
\tag_check_mc_if_nested:	160, 190, 220, 285, 286, 294, 319, 351
139, 139, 159, 318	tag_insert_bdc_node 329
\tag_check_mc_if_open:	$_{\text{tag_insert\_bmc\_node}}$ $_{\text{tag}}$
	tag insert emc node 315

\tag_lastpagelabel: $35$ , $35$ , $52$	\ltag_mc_key_properties_tl
tag_log <u>172</u>	$\dots \underline{17}, 162, 211, 224, 225, 241,$
\ltag_loglevel_int	242, 258, 259, 275, 276, 331, 366,
$\dots $ 81, 99, 129, 157, 160, 163,	375, 376, 385, 386, 395, 396, 405, 406
166, 166, 169, 170, 171, 184, 396, 427	\ltag_mc_key_stash_bool
tag_mark_spaces 356	$\dots \dots \underline{15}, 24, 33, 104, 177, 338$
\tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n	\gtag_mc_key_tag_tl
16, 38, 74, 325	<u>17</u> , 19, 194, 197, 203, 312, 352, 362
\ltag_mc_artifact_bool	\ltag_mc_key_tag_tl <u>17</u> ,
	166, 168, 193, 202, 328, 330, 332, 361
\ltag_mc_artifact_type_tl	\_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n
$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	
113, 117, 121, 125, 129, 317, 323, 325	\_tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type
\_tag_mc_bdc:nn 226, 229, 230, 270, 302	attr:
\_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n 116, 231, 274	\g_tag_mc_main_marks_seq 11
\tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn	\gtag_mc_marks 10,
	18, 27, 40, 47, 58, 64, 81, 84, 190, 210
\_tag_mc_begin_marks:nn	\g_tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq <u>11</u>
<u>16,</u> 16, 37, 73, 332	\g_tag_mc_parenttree_prop
\_tag_mc_bmc:n <u>226</u> , 227, 298	
\tag_mc_bmc_artifact: 296, 296, 309	\ltag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
\tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n <u>296</u> , 300, 310	
\ltag_mc_botmarks_seq	\tag_mc_set_label_used:n
58, <u>14</u> , 83, 104,	\gtag_mc_stack_seq 13, 69, 76, 86, 163
142, 154, 159, 201, 209, 214, 249, 266	\tag_mc_store:nnn . <u>86</u> , 86, 100, 127
\tag_mc_disable_marks: <u>71</u> , 71	\ltag_mc_tmpa_tl <u>9</u> , 248, 251, 255
\tag_mc_emc: 151, <u>226</u> , 228, 353	gtag_MCID_abs_int 7
\tag_mc_end_marks: . <u>16, 56, 75, 354</u>	\gtag_MCID_byabspage_prop
\ltag_mc_firstmarks_seq	$\underline{6}, 244, 253, 261$
$\dots 57, \underline{14}, 80, 103, 141, 158,$	\gtag_MCID_tmp_bypage_int
189, 192, 193, 200, 201, 249, 257, 259	10, 114, 251, 259, 272
$\g_{\text{marks\_seq}} \dots \underline{11}$	$\g_{\text{deg}}$ mode_lua_bool 29,
\tag_mc_get_marks: <u>77</u> , 77, 133, 154	30, 31, 69, 133, 155, 181, 192, 238
\tag_mc_handle_artifact:N	\tag_new_output_prop_handler:n
$\dots \dots $	
\tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n	tag_pairs_prop <u>189</u>
$21, 21, 174, 336$	\ltag_para_bool
\tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn	$\dots$ 200, 205, 211, 225, 261, 262, 284
231, 279, 284, 329	\g_tag_para_int <u>200</u> , 213, 217, 230
\tag_mc_handle_stash:n 41,	\ltag_para_show_bool
<u>131</u> , 131, 153, 179, <u>285</u> , 285, 295, 340	200, 206, 215, 228
\tag_mc_if_in: <u>59</u> , 59, 73, 218, 225	\tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
\tag_mc_if_in:TF 67, 141, 149, <u>218</u>	$$ $\underline{60}$ , $60$ , $274$
\tag_mc_if_in_p: 218	\ltag_parenttree_content_tl
\_tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n	<u>67,</u> 86, 98, 112, 120, 140, 143
	\gtag_parenttree_objr_tl 59, 62, 140
\_tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n	tag_pdf_object_ref 336
	\_tag_prop_gput:Nnn
\_tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n	0.008 $0.008$ $0.00$
	133, 140, 180, 186, 197, 252, 260,
\_tag_mc_insert_mcid_single	303, 309, 322, 334, 346, 358, 370,
kids:n	382, 385, 389, 401, 402, 414, 426,
\ltag_mc_key_label_tl	432, 445, 461, 481, 506, 567, 641, 686
. 17. 171, 174, 289, 332, 333, 336, 408	\ tag prop item:Nn 9. 43. 131. 136
. 11, 111, 114, 400, 004, 000, 000, 400	\ cag piop iceminh 3.40. Jol. loll

\_tag_prop_new:N	\tag_seq_new:N
$8, \underline{9}, 9, 10, 12, 75, \underline{131}, 131, 142, 474$	7, 9, <u>9</u> , 16, 77, <u>131</u> , 132, 143, 476
\_tag_prop_show:N 9, 56, 131, 138, 145	\tag_seq_show:N . 9, 49, 131, 137, 144
\tag_ref_label:nn	tag_show_spacemark 342
	\ltag_showspaces_bool 17, 26, 67
\tag_ref_value:nnn	tag_space_chars_shipout 436
33, 78, 82, 96, 97, 113, 122,	g_tag_struct_0_prop <u>75</u>
122, 126, 226, 236, 237, 559, 565, 568	\g_tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
\_tag_ref_value_lastpage:nn	<u>10,</u> 88, 89, 91, 94, 110
$57, 71, 74, \underline{127}, 127, 205, 219$	\ltag_struct_elem_stash_bool
\ctag_refmc_clist 79	
\ctag_refstruct_clist <u>79</u>	\_tag_struct_exchange_kid
g_tag_role/RoleMap_dict 391	command: N <u>142</u> , 142, 152, 183
\_tag_role_add_tag:nn	\tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n
\_tag_role_add_tag:nnnn	\tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN
<u>425</u> , 425, 447, 497	
\_tag_role_NS_new:nnn	\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn
	251, 251, 584
\g_tag_role_NS_prop	\l_tag_struct_key_label_tl
<u>10,</u> 39, 189, 207, 307, 480	
\ltag_role_role_namespace	\_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput
tmpa_tl $\underline{11}$ ,	right:nn <u>90,</u> 100, 113, 288
453, 473, 478, 480, 482, 486, 501	\_tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput
\ltag_role_role_tmpa_tl	right:nn <u>125</u> , 125, 140, 265
	\tag_struct_kid_struct_gput
\ctag_role_sttags_mathml_clist	right:nn <u>115</u> , 115, 124, 515, 563
	g_tag_struct_kids_0_seq 75
\c_tag_role_sttags_only_pdf	\tag_struct_mcid_dict:n
clist	
\c_tag_role_sttags_only_pdfII clist	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
\c_tag_role_sttags_pdf_pdfII	\_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn
clist	\gtag_struct_stack_current_tl .
\c_tag_role_sttags_pdfII_to	$\frac{15}{22}, \frac{1}{31}, \frac{1}{62}, \frac{1}{68}, \frac{1}{74},$
pdf_prop	136, 144, 150, 289, 290, 293, 501,
\ltag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa	513, 517, 518, 521, 537, 543, 564, 571
t1 11, 451, 499	\ltag_struct_stack_parent
\ltag_role_tag_tmpa_tl	tmpa_tl <u>15,</u> 259,
	267, 279, 495, 510, 514, 516, 519, 522
\gtag_role_tags_NS_prop <u>9</u> , 172,	\g_tag_struct_stack_seq
299, 363, 368, 373, 380, 405, 436, 476	. 11, 258, 494, 499, 502, 531, 535, 541
\g_tag_role_tags_prop	\c_tag_struct_StructElem
$\underline{6}$ , 92, 127, 358, 385, 394, 401, 432	entries_seq
\g_tag_role_tags_seq	\ctag_struct_StructTreeRoot
$\underline{6}, 357, 362, 367, 367, 367, 367, 367, 367, 367, 367$	entries_seq <u>17</u>
372, 379, 383, 387, 400, 403, 431, 434	\g_tag_struct_tag_NS_tl 53, 301, 307
\ctag_role_userNS_id_str	\g_tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
111, 41, 61	
\gtag_saved_in_mc_bool 281, 285, 294	\g_tag_struct_tag_tl
\_tag_seq_gput_right:Nn	53, 300, 302, 306, 500, 550
0.00000000000000000000000000000000000	\tag_struct_write_obj:n
134, 141, 362, 367, 372, 379, 400, 431	42, 48, 234, 234
\ tag seg item:Nn 9.38.131.135	\g tag tagunmarked bool 90, 172

\ltag_tmpa_box	${\tt tagmcid} \ \dots \ \underline{100}$
$\dots $ $\underline{70}$ , 164, 170, 171, 175, 186, 187	\tagmcifin
\ltag_tmpa_clist	$\verb \tagmcifinTF  \underline{28}$
$\dots \dots $ $\underline{70}$ , 619, 620, 653, 654	\tagmcuse 25, <u>11</u>
\ltag_tmpa_int	\tagpdfifluatexT <u>46</u>
$\label{eq:local_local_prop} $1_{\text{_1}}$ tag_tmpa_prop $\frac{70}{9}, 73, 81, 94, 96 $$	\tagpdfifluatexTF 46
\ltag_tmpa_seq	\tagpdfifpdftexT 48
. <u>70,</u> 157, 158, 159, 161, 162, 163,	\tagpdfifpdftexTF <u>46</u>
164, 170, 299, 300, 301, 620, 621,	\tagpdfparaOff
629, 635, 637, 639, 654, 657, 659, 683	\tagpdfparaOn
\ltag_tmpa_str	\tagpdfsetup
$\dots $ $\underline{70}$ , 220, 225, 230, 237, 242,	\tagpdfsuppressmarks 263
247, 254, 259, 264, 271, 276, 283,	tagstruct 100
318, 325, 330, 337, 342, 349, 354,	\tagstructbegin
361, 366, 371, 373, 376, 378, 381,	\tagstructend
385, 386, 391, 396, 401, 406, 410, 417	
\ltag_tmpa_tl 33, 34,	tagstructobj
$41, \underline{70}, 77, 84, 86, 88, 89, 91, 93, 94,$	\tagstructuse
96, 97, 100, 102, 111, 112, 144, 148,	tagunmarked
149, 156, 167, 174, 179, 203, 211,	TEX and LATEX $2\varepsilon$ commands:
239, 244, 307, 312, 396, 399, 405,	\@M 161
534, 535, 541, 543, 548, 550, 633, 644	\@auxout 39
\ltag_tmpb_box	\@bsphack 117
$\dots $ $\underline{70}$ , 165, 172, 173, 177, 179	\@cclv 247
$local_loc$	\@esphack 119
\tag_tree_fill_parenttree:	\@gobble 24, 48
$\underline{68}, 69, 138$	\@kernel@after@foot 277
\tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:	\@kernel@after@head $275$
118, 135	\@kernel@before@cclv 244
\tag_tree_write_classmap:	\@kernel@before@foot 276
154, 154, 217	\@kernel@before@footins 240, 242
\tag_tree_write_namespaces:	\@kernel@before@head 272, 274
187, 187, 218	\@makecol 246
\tag_tree_write_parenttree:	\@maxdepth 174
131, 131, 215	\@mult@ptagging@hook 249
\tag_tree_write_rolemap:	\@secondoftwo 24, 48
147, 147, 216	\c@page 246
\tag_tree_write_structelements:	\count@ 254
	\mult@gfirstbox 252
\tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:	\mult@rightbox 256
$32, 32, 220$	\page@sofar 251
tag-namespace $\underline{448}$	\process@cols
tag/struct/0 internal commands:	tex commands:
tag/struct/0 <u>20</u>	
tag/tree/namespaces internal commands:	\tex_botmarks:D 84
tag/tree/namespaces $\dots \dots 186$	\tex_firstmarks:D
tag/tree/parenttree internal commands:	\tex_kern:D 177
tag/tree/parenttree $\dots $ $51$	\tex_marks:D 18, 27, 40, 47, 58, 64
tag/tree/rolemap internal commands:	\tex_splitbotmarks:D 210
tag/tree/rolemap $\dots $ $\underline{146}$	\tex_splitfirstmarks:D 190
${\tt tagabspage}  \dots  \underline{100}$	\the 246
$\texttt{tagmcabs}  \dots  \underline{100}$	\tiny 217, 230
$\verb \tagmcbegin  \dots \dots 25, \underline{11}$	title 73, <u>293</u>
\tagmcend	title-o 73, <u>293</u>

tl commands:	125, 129, 167, 193, 202, 203, 234,
\c_space_tl	289, 361, 470, 471, 482, 486, 633, 655
63, 64, 88, 89, 93, 95, 97, 104,	\tl_show:N 513, 514, 679, 685
143, 160, 205, 229, 246, 442, 636, 676	\tl_tail:n 288
\tl_clear:N 156, 162, 214, 396	\tl_to_str:n 27, 39, 59
\tl_gput_right:Nn 62	\tl_use:N 64
\tl_gset:Nn 74, 194,	\l_tmpa_tl 115, 127, 466, 467, 469
203, 300, 301, 352, 362, 501, 543, 550	token commands:
\tl_if_empty:NTF 26, 34,	\token_to_str:N 41, 246
168, 171, 173, 308, 333, 467, 473, 487	tree-mcid-index-wrong $\dots \qquad \underline{39}$
\tl_if_empty:nTF 34, 122, 408	II
\tl_if_eq:NNTF 249	· ·
\tl_if_eq:NnTF 88	\unskip
\tl_if_exist:NTF 63	\use:\N
\tl_new:N 8,	\use_ii:nn
9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18,	\use_none:n 43, 74
19, 20, 27, 53, 54, 55, 59, 67, 70, 600	\use_none:nn
\tl_put_left:Nn 275, 277	(db0_none.mi
\tl_put_right:Nn 86, 98,	$\mathbf{V}$
111, 140, 211, 222, 224, 225, 241,	\vbadness 161, 185
242, 242, 244, 249, 258, 259, 274,	vbox commands:
275, 276, 276, 366, 375, 376, 385,	\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn 187
386, 395, 396, 399, 405, 406, 674, 681	\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn 163
\tl_set:Nn 33,	\vbox_unpack_drop:N 176
77, 109, 111, 113, 117, 120, 121,	\vfuzz 162